

---

**Т. Д. МАКСИМОВА**

---

# **MODAL VERBS IN USE**

---



Министерство образования и науки Российской Федерации  
Федеральное государственное бюджетное образовательное учреждение  
высшего образования  
«Алтайский государственный педагогический университет»

Т. Д. МАКСИМОВА

---

## **MODAL VERBS IN USE**

---

*Учебное пособие*

БАРНАУЛ – 2015

УДК 811.111(075)  
ББК 81.432.1я73  
М171

**Максимова, Т. Д.**

Modal Verbs in Use : учебное пособие / Т. Д. Максимова. – Барнаул : АлтГПУ, 2015. – 171 с.

ISBN 978-5-88210-787-0

***Рецензенты:***

Колесов И.Ю. – доктор филологических наук, профессор (АлтГПУ)  
Воронцова Е.А. – кандидат филологических наук, доцент (АлтГУ)

Учебное пособие основано на основных положениях теории модальности с позиций коммуникативного подхода, применяемых как в экспланаторной части, так и в практической. В пособии определяется общее отношение к модальности, структурируется вся подсистема модальных глаголов и разрабатывается система упражнений, направленная на закрепление навыков и умений в их практическом применении в разнообразных коммуникативных ситуациях. Предлагаемые задания комментативного, репродуктивного и коммуникативного характера направлены на усвоение данного аспекта практической грамматики. Значительное количество упражнений позволяет преподавателю выбирать материал для аудиторной работы и домашних заданий, а также ориентироваться на степень подготовленности обучаемого состава. В пособии разработана система самоконтроля студентов и предоставлен обширный блок контрольно-измерительных материалов.

Учебное пособие предназначено для студентов бакалавриата, обучающимся по направлениям «Лингвистика» и «Педагогическое образование» очной, очно-заочной и заочной форм обучения.

*Рекомендовано к изданию редакционно-издательским советом АлтГПУ 19 июня 2015 г.*

ISBN 978-5-88210-787-0

© Алтайский государственный  
педагогический университет, 2015

---

## ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ

---

Предлагаемое Вашему вниманию учебное пособие «Modal Verbs in Use» создано в русле коммуникативной лингвистики.

В пособии рассматривается категория модальности в преломлении к модальным глаголам и эквивалентам их замещающим. Практической части пособия предшествует теоретическое толкование модальности вообще и каждого модального глагола в отдельности. В трактовке модальности автор исходит из концепции О.В. Труновой о двойственной природе модальности, реализующейся в объективной и субъективной модальности. Данное пособие явилось результатом осмысления работ по модальным глаголам отечественных и зарубежных авторов, а также результатом длительного наблюдения над функционированием данных грамматических форм самого автора.

В настоящем пособии содержатся упражнения с простым по лексическому составу фактологическим материалом и аутентичным практическим материалом, отобранным из художественной англоязычной литературы и газетных публикаций. Такое варьирование позволяет использовать пособие на различных этапах обучения, при различных формах обучения, а также с учетом индивидуальной языковой подготовки.

Порядок представления глаголов основан на факторе частотности употребления модальных глаголов и их функций, а формирование навыков их использования основывается на принципе возрастания трудности изучаемого материала. Выполнение репродуктивных упражнений создаёт прочную базу для эффективного перехода к коммуникативным упражнениям. В их арсенале имеются как вербально прописанные ситуации для решения определенных коммуникативных задач, так и ситуации с опорой на зрительный ряд в виде рисунков, фотографий, картинок.

Каждому из разделов в практической части предпослана экспланаторная часть в теоретическом введении, где освещаются общие вопросы, касающиеся изучаемого введения. Объяснения частного характера, касающиеся отдельных форм и значений, приводятся в заданиях к упражнениям.

Значительное внимание в пособии уделено сопоставлению модальных глаголов, сходных в каком-либо отношении по значению, поскольку это представляет определенную трудность для изучающих английский язык.

Предлагаемые в пособии схемы, таблицы, разнообразные иллюстрации направлены на активное и продуктивное усвоение подаваемой информации.

В каждый раздел включены задания для самоконтроля, имеющие ключи и предполагающие возможность возврата и доработки неувоенного и организуемые, таким образом, самостоятельную работу студентов.

Включенные в пособие контрольно-измерительные материалы могут использоваться в качестве заключительных тестов по данной грамматической теме, а также в качестве финальных тестов в конце учебного семестра или курса.

В теоретической части преломляются идеи, разрабатываемые проф. О.В. Труновой, а в практической части нашел отражение иллюстративный материал, отобранный [Н.В. Москаленко].

В заключение автор выражает искреннюю признательность рецензентам профессору И.Ю. Колесову и доценту Е.А. Воронцовой.

## PREVIEW

1. MODALITY is a language category whose forms express the mode of relations in the pattern “object – property” and the degree of certainty which a person achieves in cognizing these relations. It reflects the peculiarities of people’s world perception.

2. Modality is qualified as the only language category with two roots: ontological and anthropological, which is linguistically marked as **objective** modality and **subjective** modality.

**Objective modality** shows the state of things in objective reality. It reveals facts, relates situations, and reflects qualities of an object. It is disclosed in a number of morphological categories: the category of number, tense and mood.

*I’m sure you did nothing to earn this money.*

*We can go back to the house now.*

*Raymond West glanced at his watch. ‘We mustn’t trespass on your kindness any longer,’ he said.*

**Subjective modality** shows whether the author of the utterance knows for sure what he is speaking about or expresses uncertainty. In any case it is just a SUPPOSITION. It is the result of a person’s internal work in presenting reality, the approach which depends on a person’s level of knowledge, understanding.

Language means to express suppositions are: **a) introductory constructions** with verbs of belief (*think, suppose, presume, guess, gather, etc.*), **b) modal words** (*perhaps, probably, possibly, certainly, etc.*), **c) modal verbs** (*can, may, might, must, etc.*).

**a) I suppose** it depends on how much you value life. (S.Maugham)

*I think* you asked Josephine for a cup of chocolate as a friend.

**b) Laura certainly** didn’t know what he wanted her to do.

**Maybe** I saw a glint of humour in the boy’s eyes.

**c) Where is Mrs Adams? Can she have left** the office?

*I hear your daughter recently graduated from medical school. You must be* very proud of her.

3. Both – objective and subjective – modalities reveal the following basic meanings: **necessity** and **possibility**. There’s also a meaning of **contingency** (непредвиденная, случайная возможность) which is very close in meaning to possibility and often implicit (подразумевается, скрыт) and **impossibility** which is also close to possibility but is used in combination with the negative exponent.

*It’s necessary* that the flight should be cancelled. (necessity)

*You needn’t* have wasted any more of your time. (necessity/absence of necessity)

*If better roads were built, driving would be more pleasant.* (possibility)

*Can the lift have been out of order for two days?* (possibility)

The most important thing to bear in mind when learning the use of this category is that all of the mentioned notions may relate both: ontological and anthropological phenomena. This means that necessity and possibility (contingency and impossibility) may show **a)** the mode (состояние) of world's existence **b)** as well as the level of people's awareness of this mode. This is clearly shown in the following examples:

**a)** *I **could go** out alone when I was seventeen. You **must do** as I tell you.*

**b)** *Carl **couldn't have tricked** me. I **may be** a pessimist but I don't believe a single word you say.*

Here the forms "**could go**", "**must do**" manifest the objective state of things (*objective possibility and objective necessity*), while "**couldn't have tricked**" and "**may be**" show if a person knows something for certain or hesitates in stating opinion (subjective possibility).

According to the upheld theory, **objective** state of things relates objects and phenomena of the world, where **supposition** stands for a person's opinion.

4. A modal word can have several BASIC (dictionary or systemic, or language) meanings. When it is used in speech usually only one of the dictionary meanings is manifest.

1) *You **must go** to bed* – Ты должен ложиться спать.

The basic meaning of *must* in this sentence is the meaning of necessity.

2) *He **must have gone** to bed.* – Он, должно быть пошел спать.

The basic meaning rendered by the verb *must* in this sentence is supposition.

Besides under the influence of the general context a modal verb acquires some additional meaning which may be called a CONTEXTUAL meaning.

Thus in the sentence *You must go to bed* the modal verb *must* renders the contextual meaning of obligation from the speaker's point of view. In the second example *He must have gone to bed* the verb *must* has the contextual meaning of supposition based on near certainty.

When people utter sentences they do it for certain purposes. They may intend to persuade an interlocutor to do something, or just the reverse – warn against doing something, give a piece of advice, ask for permission, allow or forbid certain actions. These are called communicative situations. The meaning of the utterance, which is formed in communicative situations is called its communicative or PRAGMATIC meaning. Thus the pragmatic meaning of the first utterance is order, and in the second one the pragmatic meaning is assumption.

Table 1

Modal verbs of objective and subjective modality meanings

MODALITY

Objective modality (the state of things)		Subjective modality (supposition)
Objective necessity	Objective possibility	Subjective possibility
must need should ought to have to be to shall will would	can/could may/might dare	can may must should will

As it is seen from the table the same modal verbs can be placed in different communicative contexts thus performing different functions and rendering different meanings.

Let's consider the sentence *"The baby must be sleeping"* in two different settings. A married couple are coming home in a late hour. On the porch of the house they are having a talk:

(a) Husband: *"I wonder why there are lights in the nursery. It's too late for a small girl to be up and playing."* Wife: *"Absolutely. It's nearly midnight. The baby must be sleeping!"*

(b) Husband: *"There are no lights in the house. It's absolutely quiet."* Wife: *"No wonder. It's nearly midnight. The baby must be sleeping. And so is the nurse."*

The difference in the functions of the modal verb "must" is evident.

In (a) **necessity** is based on natural demands thus relating to **objective modality** (Ребенок должен спать сейчас)

In (b) **necessity** reveals a personal supposition (bordering on assurance) thus corresponding to **subjective modality** (Ребенок, должно быть, спит сейчас).

The basic meanings of objective and subjective modality and its exponents may be shown in the following tables:

Table 2

## Basic meaning of POSSIBILITY

contextual meaning	the modal	communicative situations	examples
Circumstantial possibility / impossibility	<b>can</b>	stating possibility, permission, request, suggestion, refusal (neg.), prohibition (neg.)	<i>You <b>can't</b> see the stars now. It's cloudy.</i> <i>You <b>can</b> get to Brighton by bus.</i> <i>Can you give me a lift please?</i> <i>I <b>can't</b> speak with him now.</i> <i>You <b>can't</b> leave the building without permission</i>
	<b>could</b>	permission, request, intention, suggestion	<i>You <b>could</b> go to the party provided that you come at 10 p.m.</i> <i><b>Could</b> you tell me the time, please?</i> <i>Darling, I hope we <b>could</b> go out to-night.</i>
2. Alternative possibility	<b>may</b>	stating the alternative, marking choice, asking, giving or refusing permission (neg.)	<i>I <b>may</b> not know the laws, but I know what is right in this situation.</i> <i>You <b>may</b> get to Brighton by bus.</i> <i>- <b>May</b> I speak with the headmaster?</i> <i>- No, you <b>may not</b>.</i> At present time, students <b>may</b> take four courses. You may smoke. I like the smell of cigarettes
	<b>might</b>	indirect permission, reproach	<i>You <b>might</b> visit her in an hour.</i> <i>You <b>might</b> have applied for a summer job.</i>
3. Possibility due to natural course of events	<b>be (to)</b>	stating something naturally expected	<i>She was nowhere <b>to be found</b>.</i>
4. Possibility due to inward convictions	<b>dare</b>	Stating intentions based on impudence or courage, indignation	<i>(regular) I <b>have never dared to</b> dive.</i> <i>(irregular) How <b>dare</b> you be in my room!</i>



Table 3

## Basic meaning of SUPPOSITION

contextual meaning	the modal	communicative situations	examples
1. Doubt	<b>can could</b>	assumption surprise, puzzlement	<i>Can Jeff never have seen snow?</i> <i>Could she still be waiting for us?</i> <i>Can he have lent you the money? He never does.</i> <i>Could you have run the business by yourself?</i> <i>Can she be unwilling to wear seat belts?</i> <i>Could he be your cousin?</i>
2. Incredulity	<b>can't couldn't</b>	assumption, disbelief	<i>Karla <b>can't</b> have taught English at a high school. She is only nineteen.</i> <i>He <b>couldn't</b> have found her apartment with the help of the Internet.</i> <i>Bob <b>can't</b> have seen Belinda yesterday</i> <i>He <b>can't</b> be driving the car himself.</i> <i>"I had an affair in France." She stared in disbelief, "Oh no, it <b>can't</b> be true.</i>
3. Uncertainty	<b>may might</b>	assumption,	<i>The scale <b>may</b> be out of order.</i> <i>You <b>may</b> have left your umbrella on a bus.</i> <i>The landlord <b>might</b> have an extra key.</i> <i>He <b>might</b> be in Scotland now.</i>
4. Strong probability	<b>must</b>	assumption,	<i>Mary has a cat carrier. She <b>must</b> have a cat then.</i> <i>'It <b>must</b> have been a great shock,' said Mr Skinner.</i>
5. Near certainty based on reasoning умозаключения	<b>should, ought to</b>	assumption	<i>I like Demi Moore, so the new film <b>should</b> be very good.</i> <i>He checked his watch, "<b>Ought</b> to be home in another thirty minutes."</i> <i>You <b>ought to</b> have received the mail by now.</i>
6. Near certainty based on confidence убежденность	<b>will, would</b>	assumption, prediction	<i>"Who's that now?" "That will be Mary."</i> <i>"So many herbs." "I don't know their names. Besides, they are just weeds." "I like weeds" "You <b>would</b>."</i>

## Basic meaning of NECESSITY



(additional) contextual meaning	the modal verb	(communicative situation) pragmatic meaning	examples
1. Strong obligation, duty (Obligation due to objective laws or social conventions, that cannot be escaped, strong personal obligation)	<b>must</b>	requirement, rule, strong prohibition (neg.), personal conviction, strong or emphatic advice, casual invitation.	<i>Job applicants <b>must</b> have a high school diploma.</i> <i>You <b>must</b> be quiet in a hospital.</i> <i>You <b>must not</b> bring the pet into this building.</i> <i>Ray glanced at his watch. 'We <b>mustn't</b> trespass on your kindness any longer,' he said.</i> <i>I <b>must</b> call my Mum tonight. I haven't spoken to her for a week.</i> <i>You <b>must</b> come and see us some day.</i>
2. Mild obligation (as indication of sensible or correct actions)	<b>should</b>	desirability, advice, criticism	<i>I <b>should</b> clean out my closets.</i> <i>You <b>should</b> be energetic and willing to learn hotel business.</i> <i>You <b>shouldn't</b> have left the door open.</i>
3. Mild obligation (indicating responsibility, moral duty)	<b>ought to</b>	judgment, recommendation reproach	<i>I <b>ought to</b> go slowly here. It's slippery.</i> <i>He says I <b>ought to</b> help my wife more.</i> <i>You <b>ought to</b> have stopped at the traffic lights.</i>
4. Circumstantial obligation	<b>have (to)</b>	statement of inevitability, order, instruction,	<i>She <b>had to</b> leave work early today.</i> <i>I <b>don't have to</b> pay the rent alone.</i> <i>I have a roommate.</i> <i>Do you <b>have to</b> leave right now?</i> <i>You <b>will have to</b> take the test.</i> <i>You <b>don't have to</b> wear a suit to work.</i>

5. Obligation due to a previous arrangement, something destined to happen	<b>be (to)</b>	stating arrangements, order, instruction, asking about plans	<p><i>He wanted to see the room where they <b>were to</b> meet.</i></p> <p><i>You <b>are to</b> report the damage to the police.</i></p> <p><i>When <b>are you to take</b> part in the debates?</i></p> <p><i>They were to have emigrated to Australia, but Mark lost his documents.</i></p> <p><i>We <b>were never to</b> meet again.</i></p>
6. Necessity (arising from internal urge), absence of necessity (neg.)	<b>need</b>	permission not to do, requirement.	<p><i>(reg.) I need to send it by air.</i></p> <p><i>(reg.) In Washington people don't need to pay to get into most museums.</i></p> <p><i>(irreg.) You <b>needn't</b> answer now. I can wait.</i></p> <p><i>(irreg) I <b>need</b> hardly remind you that you must come to work on time.</i></p> <p><i>(irreg.) <b>Need</b> I tell you how long it can take?</i></p> <p><i>(irreg.) All the windows had screens so you <b>needn't</b> have panicked.</i></p>
7. Obligation as determination	<b>shall</b>	promise, command, threat, request, suggestion, intention asking for instruction	<p><i>I <b>shall</b> give you an iPad for your birthday. I'll <b>break</b> your neck.</i></p> <p><i>He <b>shall</b> regret this.</i></p> <p><i>What time <b>shall</b> we come and see you?</i></p> <p><i><b>Shall</b> I go on reading?</i></p>
8. Obligation as volition (arising from strong desire or unbroken order of things)	<b>will would</b>	willingness, firm intention, persistence, promise, threats, request, order, offer, resistance, refusal (neg),	<p><i>'Remember to phone Joe, won't you?' 'I <b>will</b>.'</i></p> <p><i>If you <b>will</b> help me, we may be able to do something.</i></p> <p><i>I <b>will</b> stop smoking. I <b>will</b>.</i></p> <p><i>Look, I said I <b>would</b> go and I <b>will</b>.</i></p> <p><i>I promise I <b>won't</b> smoke again.</i></p> <p><i><b>Will</b> you be quiet, please!</i></p> <p><i>The pen <b>won't</b> write.</i></p> <p><i>I tried hard but the door <b>wouldn't</b> open</i></p> <p><i>He <b>wouldn't</b> say where he had picked up the information.</i></p>

The detailed information about the use of modal verbs is presented in the Tables below.

## Modal Verbs CAN / COULD

Table 5

Type of modality	Language meaning	Contextual meaning	Pragmatic meaning	Form of the modal verb	Type of Infinitive	Translation	Example
<i>Objective</i>	<b>Possibility</b>	<b>Circumstantial possibility</b>	Permission (asking for, giving); refusing; Request; Suggestion; Prohibition	CAN COULD CAN'T COULDN'T	Non-perfective	может	<i>How <b>can</b> you be so heartless?</i> <i><b>Can</b> I have another cup of tea?</i> <i>You <b>can</b> trim my beard too.</i> <i><b>Could</b> you show me the way?</i> <i>We <b>can</b> go back to the house now.</i> <i>You <b>can't</b> eat so much ice-cream, darling.</i>  <i>He <b>can</b> repair my car by tomorrow.</i>
			Stating possibility	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center; justify-content: center;"> <span style="font-size: 2em; margin-right: 5px;">↗</span> <span style="font-size: 2em; margin-right: 5px;">↘</span> </div> pos- COULD	Non-perfective, Perfective	мог бы	<i>I <b>could</b> dine out tonight.</i> <i>I felt I belonged to them, I <b>could have</b> kissed them.</i>
<i>Subjective</i>	<b>Possibility (Supposition)</b>	Strong <b>1. Doubt</b>	Surprise; Puzzlement	CAN ... ?	Non-perfective, Perfective	 Неужели...?	<i><b>Can</b> he <b>dislike</b> traveling by air?</i> <i><b>Could</b> they <b>be sleeping</b>?</i> <i><b>Can</b> he <b>have left</b>?</i>
		Mild doubt		COULD ... ?			
		Strong <b>2. Incredulity</b>	Assumption; Disbelief	CAN'T ... .		 Не может быть ... .	<i>He <b>couldn't be</b> in love with Meg.</i> <i>They <b>can't be enjoying</b> his speech.</i> <i>Jack <b>couldn't have told</b> a lie.</i>
		Mild incredulity		COULDN'T ... .			

MAY/MIGHT

Table 6

Type of modality	Language meaning	Contextual meaning	Pragmatic situation	Modal Verb	Type of Infinitive	Time relation	Translation	Example	Notes
Objective Possibility	Assertive Possibility	Stating the alternative possibility	may	do	present	можешь	<i>You <b>may</b> go there by bus.</i>	Cond. M. Cond.M. Cond. M. Cond.M. formal formal (written notice) Cond. M Cond. M.	
			might	<u>do</u> have done	<u>present</u> past	мог бы	<i>You <b>might</b> go there by bus.</i> <i>You <b>might have gone</b> there by bus.</i>		
			might	have done	past	чуть было не	<i>Be careful. You <b>might have broken</b> my vase.</i>		
			suggestion may } might }	do	present	можешь мог бы	<i>You <b>may</b> consult him on the point.</i> <i>You <b>might</b> consult him on the point.</i>		
			preference, intention, may / might as well,	do	present	пожалуй лучше пожалуй	<i>I <b>may</b> just as well take the child with me.</i> <i>I <b>may/might</b> as well stay at home tonight.</i>		
			asking for permission may } might }	do	present	Можно?	<i><b>May</b> I get it?</i> <i><b>Might</b> I speak to you please?</i>		
			giving permission may	do	present	можно	<i>Certainly you <b>may</b>. You <b>may</b> use the phone.</i>		
			refusing permission may	do	present	нельзя	<i>Children <b>may</b> not be left unaccompanied.</i>		
			prohibition may	do	present	нельзя	<i>My name <b>may</b> not be mentioned.</i>		
			reproach might/could	<u>do</u> have done	<u>present</u> past	мог бы	<i>You <b>might/could</b> be more careful!</i> <i>You <b>might/could</b> have rung me up!</i>		
Subjective Possibility	Uncertainty	Assumption	may	<u>do</u> have done	<u>present</u> past	возможно, может быть,	<i>He <b>may be</b> in his room now.</i> <i>He <b>may have spoken</b> to Jane yesterday.</i>	may≈50% certain	
			might	<u>do</u> have done	<u>present</u> past		<i>He <b>might want</b> some food.</i> <i>He <b>might have forgotten</b>.</i>	might≈45% certain	

MUST

Table 7

Type of modality	Language meaning	Contextual meaning	Pragmatic situation	Modal Verb	Type of Infinitive	Time relation	Translation	Example	Notes
Objective	Necessity	<p><b>Strong Obligation:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– obligation due to personal convictions,</li> <li>– obligation due to objective laws and social conventions,</li> <li>– obligation due to rules and requirements</li> </ul>	<p>Stating necessity</p> <p>Command</p> <p>Strong Prohibition</p> <p>Intention</p> <p>Emphatic advice</p> <p>Invitation</p>	must	do	present	(не)должен	<p><i>I <b>must</b> give up smoking.</i></p> <p><i>He certainly <b>must</b> support his ex-wife.</i></p> <p><i>A man <b>must</b> always do what he knows is right.</i></p> <p><i>The Bible tells us quite clearly what we <b>must</b> do.</i></p> <p><i>You <b>must</b> get up early.</i></p> <p><i>You <b>must</b> not say such things in her presence.</i></p> <p><i>Now I <b>must</b> introduce you to all.</i></p> <p><i>You <b>mustn't</b> put off what you think is right.</i></p> <p><i>You <b>must</b> come and see us some day.</i></p>	<p><b>You must</b></p> <p><b>must not</b></p> <p><b>I must</b></p> <p><b>You must</b></p> <p><b>You must</b></p>
Subjective	Supposition	Assurance	Assumption	must	<p>do</p> <hr/> <p>have done</p>	<p>present</p> <hr/> <p>past</p>	<p>должно быть, очевидно, вероятно</p>	<p><i>He <b>must be</b> your cousin.</i></p> <p><i>The boy <b>must have seen</b> the accident</i></p>	<p>≈95% certainty</p>

Type of modality	Language meaning	Contextual meaning	Pragmatic situation	Modal Verb	Type of Infinitive	Time relation	Translation	Example
Objective	necessity	Obligation due to previous arrangements, plans, destiny	stating arrangement		do	present future past	договорились должен	<i>We <b>are to</b> meet at 5.</i> <i>The concert <b>was to</b> last for 3 hours.</i>  <i>You <b>are to</b> stay where you belong.</i>  <i>You <b>are to</b> be inside. Don't go out.</i> <i>You <b>are to</b> do it at once.</i>  <i>You <b>are to</b> take this medicine twice a day.</i>  <i>When <b>is</b> the car to be ready?</i> <i>When <b>are you to ring</b> him up?</i>
			order	is to				
command	is to							
instruction	was to							
		stating smth destined to happen					суждено	<i>She <b>was to</b> become my wife.</i>
		stating planes not carried out		was to	have done	past	должен был, но не	<i>The plane <b>was to have taken</b> off at 2:45, but it didn't.</i>
	possibility	Circumstantial possibility due to natural course of events	stating smth naturally expected	is to / was to	be done (Passive Inf.)	present / past	можно≈may or can	<i>James <b>was to be found</b> in the club every night.</i> Джеймса можно было найти в клубе каждый вечер.

HAVE TO

Table 9

Type of modality	Language meaning	Contextual meaning	Pragmatic situation	Modal Verb	Type of Infinitive	Time relation	Translation	Example	Notes
Objective	Necessity	Circumstantial obligation	statement of inevitability	have to	do	present	вынужден	She <b>has to</b> wear glasses.	I <b>don't have to</b> get up early.
				had to		past		He <b>had to walk</b> to work, didn't he?	
				will have to		future	придется (должен)	We'll have to stay here for two days.	
				have had to				I <b>have had to</b> be on a diet for many years already.	I <b>have had to</b> ...
			order					You <b>have to</b> come at 5 o'clock.	
			recommendation					You <b>have to</b> change your toothpaste.	
regulation				You <b>have to</b> wear the uniform.					
asking for instructions						How much <b>do I have to</b> pay?	<b>Do</b> you have to...?		



NEED

Table 10

Type of modality	Language meaning	Contextual meaning	Pragmatic situation	Modal Verb	Type of Infinitive	Time relation	Translation	Example	Notes
Objective	Necessity	Necessity arising from internal urge Absence of necessity	stating absence of necessity	<b>irregular:</b> Need ... ? needn't	do	present past future	вряд ли нужно	<i>You <b>need hardly explain</b> why people laugh at the things you say.</i>	<b>irregular :</b> negative and interrogative sentences
			requirements				нет необходимости,	<i>Passengers <b>needn't pay</b> for carry-on luggage.</i>	
			offers and suggestions				незачем,	<i>You <b>needn't take</b> the umbrella. The weather forecast says 'No rains'.</i>	
			asking for permission				нужно	<i><b>Need I give</b> her that message?</i>	
			permission not to do smth				можно не	<i>You <b>needn't take</b> the car out of the garage for her today.</i>	
			..... Stating an unnecessary action (waste of time and effort)	.....	..... have done	..... past	..... не к чему зря, незачем, можно было и не	<i>I <b>needn't have gone</b> to see the match. I was sure our team would lose.</i>	
			intention	<b>regular:</b> need, needs, need- ed doesn't need	to do	present past future	нужно	<i>You <b>need to have</b> another cup of tea. I <b>need to buy</b> a new dress. He <b>didn't need to drive</b> all the way. <b>Do you need to wear</b> a uniform?</i>	<b>regular:</b> all types of sentences  I need to Do you need to...? He doesn't need...
			offer, suggestion						
			permission not to do						

SHOULD

Table 11

Type of modality	Language meaning	Contextual meaning	Pragmatic situation	Modal Verb	Type of Infinitive	Time relation	Translation	Example	Notes
Objective	Necessity	Mild obligation	desirability	should, shouldn't	do	present, future	(не)следует, (вряд ли)нужно	<i>I shouldn't get nervous, but I always do. People should keep their words.</i>	1st person 3d person
			advice		do		нужно	<i>You should have a biopsy.</i>	2d person
			indication of sensible or correct actions		do			<i>He should do what he is told by the tutor.</i>	3d person
			criticism		have done		не следовало = зря, незачем, можно было и не	<i>He should have applied for a job. She shouldn't have left the child alone. I shouldn't have said that.</i>	3d person
		reproach		have done		следовало	<i>You should have told us.</i>	2d person	
Subjective	Supposition	Near certainty due to the natural course of events	assumption, confidence	should	do	present	должен, должно быть	<i>They should be reaching Chicago now.</i>	≈90% of certainty

OUGHT TO

Table 12

Type of modality	Language meaning	Contextual meaning	Pragmatic situation	Modal Verb	Type of Infinitive	Time relation	Translation	Example	Notes
Objective	Necessity	Strong requirements due to social conventions  Moral duty	statement of laws and conventions	ought	to do	present future	(не)следует,  (вряд ли)нужно	<i>One <b>ought to</b> be responsible for one's deeds.</i>	3d p.
			judgment		to do			<i>Man <b>ought to</b> concentrate on trying to develop his character.</i>	
			recommendation		to do			<i>He <b>ought to</b> do what he is told by the tutor.</i>	
			duties		to do			<i>Then there didn't seem to be anything else I <b>ought to</b> do.</i>	1st p.
			regulations		to do			<i>I'm old enough to understand that men <b>ought not to</b> fight in front of ladies.</i>	2d p.
			advice		to do			<i>You <b>ought to</b> see your dentist.</i>	
			criticism		to do to have done	present past	следует следовало	<i>You <b>ought to be</b> more careful to your duties. He <b>ought to have worked</b> out a strategy.</i>	
			reproach		to do to have done	present past	не следовало = зря, незачем, можно было и не, следовало, надо было	<i>You <b>ought to have</b> your suit dry-cleaned. She <b>oughtn't to have sold</b> the ring You <b>ought to have informed</b> us about the telephone bit.</i>	
Subjective	Supposition	Near certainty due to the natural course of events	assumption, confidence	ought	to do	present	должен, должно быть	<i>This <b>ought to be</b> Peter.</i>	≈90 % of certainty



WILL, WOULD

Table 14

Type of modality	Language meaning	Contextual meaning	Pragmatic situation	Modal Verb	Type of Infinitive	Time relation	Translation	Example	Notes
Objective	Necessity	Obligation as volition (arising from strong desire, unbroken order of things)	willingness	will would	do	present future	охотно, если будет желание	<i>Can somebody help me? – I <b>will</b>. If you <b>will</b> come, I'll be glad.</i>	≈ I want, I'm ready
			firm intention promise threat				все равно	<i>I <b>will</b> stay here whatever you say I <b>will</b> stop smoking. I'll break your neck.</i>	1st person
			refusal failure to perform the immediate function				не хотеть, не желать никак не	<i>The man <b>won't</b> give his name and address. The pen <b>won't</b> write.</i>	person thing
			habitual behaviour			present past	частенько бывало	<i>He <b>will</b> come on us on every Sunday. In childhood he <b>would</b> go skating every Sunday.</i>	
			natural behaviour request offer order					<i>Boys <b>will</b> be boys. You <b>will</b> help me, won't you? <b>Will</b> you have a wine? Bill and Garry, you <b>will</b> stay inside the building and protect it.</i>	
		Near certainty	assumption, prediction	will would	do/have done	mostly present, past	никто иной, как безусловно	<i>-Who's that knocking on the door? -That <b>will</b> be Mary.</i>	≈99%

DARE

Table 15

Type of modality	Language meaning	Contextual meaning	Pragmatic situation	Modal Verb	Type of Infinitive	Time relation	Translation	Example	Notes
Objective	Possibility	Possibility due to inward convictions	Intentions based on impudence, courage, indignation	dare ( <b>irregular</b> )	do	present past	Да как ты смеешь! He насмеливаюсь	<i>How <b>dare</b> you <b>say</b> that?</i> <i><b>Dare</b> she <b>come</b>?</i> <i>I <b>daren't</b> ask you. Will you do it for me?</i> <i>He <b>dared not</b> come.</i> <i><b>Don't</b> you <b>dare</b>!</i>	exclamatory, inter. & negative s-ces
			.....	dare ( <b>regular</b> )	to do	present, past, future	Посмей только! не осмеливаться, не сметь посметь	<i>He <b>doesn't dare</b> to come here again.</i> <i>He <b>didn't dare</b> to stop me.</i> <i>He <b>won't dare</b> to deny his words</i> <i>Do they <b>dare</b> to say this?</i>	mainly in negative s-ces
			Challenge	dare ( <b>regular</b> )	to do	present	Попробуй! Посмей только! А тебе не сделать! Спорим, ...	<i>I <b>dare</b> you <b>to say</b> that straight to her face.</i>	.....
			<b>Mixed cases</b> <i>You dare! Don't you dare! (Посмей только!)</i> <i>Don't you dare laugh at me! Don't you dare to lay a hand on him!</i> <i>Do you dare put your mind to the test?</i> <i>He didn't dare open his eyes.</i> <i>The bank dares not try to call in its debts.</i>						

---

## EXERCISES

---

# CAN

- 1** a) study the table on the use of *can*;  
b) point out the sentences in which *can* expresses ability, capability;  
c) define the pragmatic situations of the use of the modal verb '*can*'.

1. He's broken his arm. Of course he **can't** swim today.
2. No, if he isn't a member of the club, I'm afraid he **can't** swim.
3. He **can't** swim. And **can** you?
4. He **can't** swim this weekend. There's no water in the swimming pool.
5. They installed a telephone at last and I **could** phone.
6. I **could** phone my friends but I feel too exhausted.
7. **Could** Ron drive the car, please?
8. **Could** Ron drive a car when he was 14?
9. Ron **can't** have been driving the car that day.
10. You **can't** drive the car. It's out of the question.
11. **Could** I drive your car today?
12. Now I can see it very well that you **can't** drive a car.
13. **Could** you type these letters for me?
14. **Could** you type when you were 10?
15. **Could** she have typed all those letters?

- 2** ARRANGE the sentences in two columns showing objective or subjective types of modality.

1. One of the court officials came to give me the suicide information and to say that I **could** go home.
2. **Can** he have been attracted by Millicent?
3. – I...er... I don't think I'll go home tonight, if I **can** stay here.  
– Of course you **can**.
4. She **can't** be looking after him.
5. **Could** I have my photo taken?
6. You **can't** play football in the street.
7. **Could** there be only one hotel to stay at? Is the town so small?
8. They **could** still be in the laboratory now.
9. **Can** "The Titanic" have won 11 Oscars?
10. She **can't** be getting married next month.
11. – **Can** you lend me \$15?  
– I'm afraid I **can't**. I don't have any money.
12. I **can't** imagine 5 years studying Computer Science.
13. You **can't** have forgotten my invitation, can you?
14. You **can** always turn to me if you are in trouble.
15. The only thing that irritated her was that they **couldn't** arrive before dark.

**3** ➤ **COMPLETE the sentences in accordance with the stated communicative situations. More than one answer is possible.**

Your luggage is heavy. <i>I could help you.</i>	offer
He has bought a yacht. _____	disbelief
My cell phone is out of order, Mike. _____	asking for permission
It's too cold. _____	refusing permission
You want to take two pieces of luggage. The flight attendant says " _____ " (carry on)	giving permission
I know you've been busy all these days. _____	suggestion
She is thin and very bony. _____	stating impossibility
You and your brother are not alike. _____	doubt
The nurse was out. _____	disbelief
It's a no-smoking area. _____	prohibition
I can't see Tom. _____	puzzlement, surprise
It's so stuffy in here. _____	request
They say Nelson has been to the USA. _____	incredulity

**4** ➤ **Say WHAT shows the TIME REFERENCE: the verb *can* itself or the type of the infinitive?**

1. I could read when I was four.
2. Can the rating be so high?
3. You can't write it in pencil. It's forbidden.
4. But you can write that kind of letter much better than I can.
5. Harry, you could have spoken to the headmaster.
6. You can come tomorrow.
7. She can't be your mother. She looks so young.
8. Can the ship have departed?
9. Could she be a very good teacher? She has no experience.
10. Could you book a hotel in a quiet place?
11. You don't like doing the washing up, do you? I could do it for you.
12. Can you phone him again? He doesn't want to speak to me.



**5** State the **TIME REFERENCE**.

1. Could I use your knife, please?
2. 'We could phone Marge,' uncle Vernon suggested.
3. He can't have left yet. It's only nine o'clock.
4. No kidding please. I've got a nose and I can smell.
5. He could have entered a Ph.D. program.
6. I *wish* to God I could give you some help – but the plain fact is I know nothing.
7. If you want, we can talk about it tonight over dinner.
8. Can he have passed the driving license test?
9. – My car could be ready.  
– Let's hope for the best.
10. Could the sun be rising already?
11. He couldn't have accepted the job offer.
12. He couldn't get the feel of his new car.

**6** TRANSLATE into Russian the sentences with the verbs of *physical perception and mental processes*: see, hear, understand etc.

1. I **can hear** some mournful sound. **Can't you?**     $\implies$     *Я слышу какие-то жалобные звуки. А ты?*
2. She **could feel** her heart rate slowing down.
3. – And do you know who told him that you'd taken the cheque?  
– I **can guess** now.
4. As far as she **could see** the management was completely inept( неумелый).
5. She **could feel** the panic welling up inside her. She **could hear** her heart beating faster and **feel** her legs tremble. She clenched her fists until she **could feel** her nails digging into her palms.
6. And then she heard the sound of the bike as Tyke started it up, she **could smell** the oil and the diesel, and although she **couldn't see** him at all, she knew that everything was going wrong.
7. Like a badly tracking video she **could see** her mother standing by the garden gate, wearing her black T-shirt.
8. She **could smell** the aroma of the freshly brewed coffee.

**7** Complete the sentences using **BE ABLE + TO INFINITIVE** in the required tense form.

1. I'd like to *be able to travel* as much as possible \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Since that time we \_\_\_\_\_.
3. When I'm a teacher, my students will \_\_\_\_\_.
4. One day, everybody will \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I know my mother would like to \_\_\_\_\_.
6. In the nearest future, people will \_\_\_\_\_.
7. If you take our courses, you'll \_\_\_\_\_.
8. As far as I understand in those days he \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Our roads are bad now but \_\_\_\_\_.
10. In 5 years I'll \_\_\_\_\_.

**8** Fill in CAN or BE ABLE TO in the appropriate tense form. Alternatives are possible.

1. So far I (not) \_\_\_\_\_ find any one who saw this man Ascher in the neighbourhood.
2. Don't worry, we \_\_\_\_\_ print the party invitations tomorrow.
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ print the party invitations if you fix the printer.
4. I hope in two months I \_\_\_\_\_ knit a jumper for Joe.
5. My husband (never) \_\_\_\_\_ drive a car, I'm afraid.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ your son do such a puzzle?
7. When you had a problem, I was happy \_\_\_\_\_ assist you.
8. – Can you speak Italian? – No I can't and I (never) \_\_\_\_\_ speak a foreign language.
9. She \_\_\_\_\_ put her clothes on although her arm was bandaged.

**9** Translate into English. Focus on CAN/COULD and BE ABLE TO (SUCCEED, MANAGE).

1. Тремя месяцами позже Патрику удалось убедить его партнеров в том, что фирма нуждается в собственной брошюре.
2. Важно уметь ладить с соседями.
3. Мне лучше поспать. Иначе я завтра не смогу выполнять работу.
4. Он относился ко мне как к другу, который мог бы помочь ему, когда никто другой не мог бы, и мне это льстило.
5. Он посмотрел на меня своими темно-голубыми глазами, и я почувствовала, что не могу сказать 'нет'.
6. Когда Корделия отдвинулась в сторону, Дон смог увидеть, что Эш наблюдает за ним.
7. Ей не представлялось, что она сможет помочь ему со свадьбой.
8. Я снова собираюсь к ней. Возможно, мне удастся убедить ее сменить работу.
9. Она знала, что может убедить Дэна переехать в Штаты, чтобы быть рядом.
10. Ты можешь оставить работу в Штатах и вернуться домой ко мне?
11. Она допускала, что они расстанутся когда-нибудь. Но она знала, что может справиться с этим.
12. Сюзанна задумывалась, сможет ли она когда-нибудь произнести, что она доктор и поверить в это сама.
13. Саманте повезло найти местечко в трамвае, и она могла развернуть распечатку IBM.
14. Неплохо бы иметь деньги, чтобы быть в состоянии позволять себе нанимать личных поваров для частных обедов.
15. Он не мог осознать, что я отклонила его предложение.

**10** TRANSLATE into English. Focus on *can/could* in their objective meanings.

1. Вы знаете друг друга давно. Вы можете жениться.
2. Здесь нельзя употреблять сослагательное наклонение.
3. Жаль, что мы не отправили послание утром. Сейчас бы уже могли получить ответ.
4. Не могли бы вы сделать это для меня лично?
5. Вы можете увидеть его через 3 дня.
6. Позвольте вам помочь?
7. Здесь нельзя курить.
8. Вам нельзя вставать.
9. Все могут получать медицинское обслуживание бесплатно, если есть страховой полис.
10. Здесь нельзя долго оставаться.
11. Не могли бы вы дать нам инструкции?
12. Туфли мне узки. Вы можете растянуть их при мне?
13. Ким, мог бы ты оказать мне услугу и позвонить в приемную?
14. Без разрешения нельзя входить в операционную комнату.
15. Ах, если бы я могла поехать в отпуск в Италию!
16. Если бы я жила в Париже, я могла бы покупать хорошие дорогие духи.

**11** Express INCREDULITY.

1. Is Fred divorced?  $\implies$  He can't be divorced. He has never been married.
2. I hear Elvis is on a tour round Europe. \_\_\_\_\_
3. As far as I know Ed is an excellent golf player. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Did Antony get a promotion? \_\_\_\_\_
5. I recon our daughter will be twenty next week. \_\_\_\_\_
6. The children went to bed just after supper. \_\_\_\_\_
7. John has had his ears pierced. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Ben is cleaning the windows. \_\_\_\_\_
9. I haven't seen Jeffery for ages. Is he in hospital? \_\_\_\_\_
10. I'm sure your grandpa's told a lie. \_\_\_\_\_
11. People saw Jake in the pub drinking alcohol. \_\_\_\_\_
12. As far as I know the old man was moving to the coast at that time. \_\_\_\_\_
13. I ran into her old boy friend, Tom, at a disco. \_\_\_\_\_
14. The lift isn't working. \_\_\_\_\_
15. They say Dora is on a diet. \_\_\_\_\_

**12** Express DOUBT.

1. The picture is priced at \$1000.  $\implies$  Can the price be so high? / Could it cost so much?
2. Sam has 8 children. \_\_\_\_\_
3. My younger child goes to school already. \_\_\_\_\_
4. They reached the top of the hill in half an hour. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Ken's mother-in-law is always flinging insults at him. \_\_\_\_\_
6. They put him in prison. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Erica has passed her entrance exams. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Brenda is engaged. \_\_\_\_\_
9. The baby is sleeping now. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Herbert has changed his cottage for a small apartment. \_\_\_\_\_
11. I can't find my wallet. \_\_\_\_\_
12. I saw Edward on a yacht. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Tony is dating Pam. \_\_\_\_\_
14. I see nothing of my car. \_\_\_\_\_
15. He didn't come to dinner. \_\_\_\_\_

**13** TRANSLATE into English.

1. Неужели я произвожу впечатление легкомысленного человека?
2. Не может быть, что я ошиблась.
3. Не может быть, что я ошибаюсь.
4. Не может быть, что здесь запрещено нырять.
5. Неужели я оставила сдачу в магазине?
6. Не может быть, что Анна ищет работу.
7. Не может быть, что эта пара туфель тоже мала.
8. Неужели я оставила машину незапертой?
9. Не может быть, что они встречаются так долго.
10. Неужели мы прожили в этой квартире 20 лет?
11. Неужели она разбила мою машину?
12. Неужели она актриса?
13. Не может быть, что цены понижаются.
14. Не может быть, что Джулия на диете.
15. Не может быть, что Дик уезжает в деревню.
16. Неужели они брат и сестра? Не может быть. Они не похожи.
17. Пора вставать? Не может быть, что уже 8.
18. Неужели твоя мама написала ему письмо первой?
19. Не может быть, что этот фильм имел такой успех.
20. Не может быть, чтобы жена нашла записку. Неужели я оставил ее в кармане жилета?

**14** Look at the pictures and read the text. Write as many sentences as you can to express DOUBT and INCREDULITY.

### BRIDGING THE GAP



In 2004 the groundbreaking Eurotunnel linking Dover and Calais celebrated its tenth birthday. It has inspired many similar extraordinary feats of engineering. Around the world, new rail and road links over bridges and through tunnels are dramatically reducing journey times and increasing travel choices from country to country.

Spain and Morocco are to begin a series of engineering tests for a rail link under the Strait of Gibraltar. Taking the form of a 24-mile rail tunnel beneath the Mediterranean, it will connect Europe and Africa and ultimately make it possible to travel by train from Scotland to South Africa.

Dr John Anderson, of the Institution of Civil Engineers, says there's also talk of a tunnel linking mainland Britain and Ireland. 'Big tunnel projects such as Spain and Morocco, England and Ireland, or even the proposed tunnel between Alaska and Russia across the Bering Strait, are all dream projects for the international tunneling industry.'

The Britain-Ireland tunnel would be similar to the Bosphorus link, which has already begun construction. It's the first rail tunnel linking the European and Asian sides of Istanbul, and officials say it will be strong enough to resist earthquakes measuring up to 9 on the Richter scale.

Only in June 2004 construction workers in southern France connected the last link in the world's highest road bridge. It was designed by Lord Norman Foster.

More than three years and 165 million have gone into the project, which completes a new motorway link between Paris and the Mediterranean. It is higher than the Eiffel Tower.

People believe that new tunnels and bridges will revolutionize travel.



**15** TRANSLATE into English and complete the statements expressing DOUBT or INCREDULITY.

1. Она такая красивая. Не может быть, что...  $\implies$  She is so beautiful. He can't have left her.
2. У него была хорошо оплачиваемая работа. Не может быть, что \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Дорога была опасной. Неужели \_\_\_\_\_
4. Что это за блюдо? Неужели \_\_\_\_\_
5. Это был в высшей степени секретный материал. Не может быть \_\_\_\_\_

6. Где мой велосипед? Не вижу его. Неужели \_\_\_\_\_
7. Он в самом деле носит обручальное кольцо? Неужели \_\_\_\_\_
8. Дора не носит вышедшие из моды вещи. Не может быть \_\_\_\_\_
9. Я видела его в церкви. Неужели \_\_\_\_\_
10. Я встречалась с ним вчера. Не может быть \_\_\_\_\_
11. Где мы? Неужели \_\_\_\_\_
12. Почему часы показывают полдень? Неужели \_\_\_\_\_
13. Рэнди прекрасный водитель. Не может быть \_\_\_\_\_
14. Не видела его долгое время. Неужели \_\_\_\_\_
15. Не могу понять, как они забрались в дом. Неужели \_\_\_\_\_

**16** **REPHRASE the following sentences expressing doubt or incredulity:**

**a) use the modal verb *can***





1. The information is hardly relevant to this subject.  $\Rightarrow$  *The information can't be relevant to this subject.*
2. It's surprising that he has opened a bank account.  $\Rightarrow$  *Can he have opened a bank account?*
3. It's incredible that she should be so rude.
4. Is it possible that Camilla should be writing a new novel?
5. I find it doubtful that she has pierced her eyebrows.
6. It's next to impossible that there is a hole in the boot. I bought it not long ago.
7. I hardly believe my eyes that the grass has grown so much.
8. I rather doubt that your husband has repaired your television.
9. It's surprising that she is wearing worn-out shoes.
10. It's doubtful that the old couple had their telephone installed.
11. I hear Margo is staying at the Ritz hotel. I can't believe it.
12. I think it quite impossible that the thief should have confessed.
13. I don't think it is correct.

**b) use the substitutes**

1. She can't have lost his letter.  $\Rightarrow$  *I hardly believe she has lost his letter.*
2. He can't be in the car.
3. Can she have sent such a telegram?
4. Can you have been corresponding with your friend for 3 years?
5. He couldn't have forgotten my birthday.
6. Can the exam papers have been marked?
7. These suitcases can't be yours.
8. Could they have traveled only at night?
9. He can't have paid for the meal.
10. Chris and Hank can't be twins.
11. Could they have been living here so long?
12. It can't be snowing around this time of the year.

**17** Express (a) incredulity or (b) doubt about **NEGATIVE STATEMENTS**.

NEGATIVE STATEMENTS

He didn't find her		Can/Could he have <b>failed</b> to find her? Неужели он <b>не</b> нашел ее?
		He can't/couldn't have <b>failed</b> to find her. Не может быть, что <b>не</b> нашел он ее.
She doesn't like dogs.		Can/Could she <b>dislike</b> them?
		She can't /couldn't <b>dislike</b> them.
The child isn't sleeping.		Can/Could he be <b>awake</b> ?
		He can't/couldn't be <b>awake</b> .
They didn't notice it.		Can/Could <b>nobody</b> have noticed it?
		<b>Nobody</b> can/could have noticed it.
He didn't get married		Can/Could he <b>never</b> have got married?
He doesn't speak English well.		Can/Could he speak it <b>badly</b> ?
		He can't/couldn't speak it <b>badly</b> .

**a)**

1. The boss hasn't signed the contract yet. \_\_\_\_\_
2. We have never been to Brighton. \_\_\_\_\_
3. My mother doesn't like detective stories. \_\_\_\_\_
4. My client says he doesn't know the witness. \_\_\_\_\_
5. My wife didn't lock the door. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Our principal never shouts. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Their boss doesn't speak English. \_\_\_\_\_
8. The food doesn't taste good. \_\_\_\_\_
9. His secretary doesn't look pretty. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Curtis doesn't believe me. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Betsy never drives to work. \_\_\_\_\_
12. My wife doesn't approve of my hobby. \_\_\_\_\_
13. She doesn't like sports at all. \_\_\_\_\_
14. They didn't inform us of the meeting. \_\_\_\_\_

**b)**

1. Stacy doesn't trust her parents. \_\_\_\_\_
2. My father didn't like the match. \_\_\_\_\_
3. I don't know anything about his escape from prison. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Oliver didn't prove his innocence. \_\_\_\_\_
5. They say this Englishman doesn't like golf. \_\_\_\_\_

6. The court doesn't believe it. \_\_\_\_\_
7. I didn't make contact with the resident. \_\_\_\_\_
8. The secretary says she didn't receive the message. \_\_\_\_\_
9. They don't realize the degree of the risk. \_\_\_\_\_
10. The manager is not in the office. \_\_\_\_\_
11. I'm sure Barbara is not honest. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Caroline didn't look elegant. \_\_\_\_\_
13. My husband's parents are not kind. \_\_\_\_\_
14. They say the doctor was not polite. \_\_\_\_\_

**18** TRANSLATE into English, focus on NEGATION.

**a)**

1. Неужели он не верит мне? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Неужели они не слышали шума? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Не может быть, что они не объявили победителя. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Не может быть, что мэра нет в городе. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Не может быть, что пациент не спит сейчас. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Не может быть, что Руперт не сфотографировал Майкла Джексона. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Неужели никто из вас не читал «Гарри Поттера»? \_\_\_\_\_
8. Не мог он не сознаться. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Неужели собака не залаяла? \_\_\_\_\_
10. Неужели вам не нравится ее яблочный пирог? \_\_\_\_\_
11. Не может быть, что вам не понравились картины Поля Гогена. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Неужели это имя вам не знакомо? \_\_\_\_\_
13. Не может быть, что его невеста непривлекательна. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Не может быть, что мини-юбки не в моде. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Неужели полиция не поймала взломщика? \_\_\_\_\_

**b)**

1. Неужели она дома? \_\_\_\_\_  
 Неужели она не дома? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Неужели она была дома? \_\_\_\_\_  
 Неужели ее не было дома? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Не может быть, что она дома. \_\_\_\_\_  
 Не может быть, что ее нет дома. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Не может быть, что она была дома. \_\_\_\_\_  
 Не может быть, что ее не было дома. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Неужели он ей верит? \_\_\_\_\_  
 Не может быть, что он ей не верит. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Неужели он ей поверил? \_\_\_\_\_  
 Не может быть, что он ей не поверил. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Неужели тебе не нравится отель? \_\_\_\_\_  
 Неужели тебе нравится отель? \_\_\_\_\_
8. Не может быть, что тебе понравился отель. \_\_\_\_\_  
 Не может быть, что отель тебе не понравился. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Не может быть, что он не спит сейчас. \_\_\_\_\_  
 Не может быть, что он спит сейчас. \_\_\_\_\_



10. Неужели он не спал в это время? \_\_\_\_\_  
Неужели он спал в это время? \_\_\_\_\_
11. Не может быть, что пациент не осознает опасности. \_\_\_\_\_  
Не может быть, что пациент осознает опасность. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Неужели город не выглядит процветающим (prosperous)? \_\_\_\_\_  
Неужели город выглядит процветающим? \_\_\_\_\_
13. Неужели они нашли переводчика? \_\_\_\_\_  
Неужели они так и не нашли переводчика? \_\_\_\_\_
14. Неужели все говорят по-английски? \_\_\_\_\_  
Неужели никто не говорит по-английски? \_\_\_\_\_
15. Неужели Мартин так никогда и не стал адвокатом? \_\_\_\_\_  
Неужели Мартин стал адвокатом? \_\_\_\_\_

с)

1. Неужели так жарко? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Неужели он не выключил телевизор? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Не может быть, что авария была такой серьезной. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Неужели я не закрыла дверь? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Не может быть, что булочник не любит булки. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Неужели она избежала аварии? \_\_\_\_\_
7. Не может быть, что на грабителе не было перчаток. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Неужели никто не посадил собаку на цепь? \_\_\_\_\_
9. Не может быть, что здесь нет другого выхода. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Не может быть, что они поставили железные решетки на окна. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Неужели они не знают нашего нового адреса? \_\_\_\_\_
12. Неужели теперь в Сибири тепло зимой? \_\_\_\_\_
13. Не может быть, что врач потерял самообладание. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Не может быть, что твой начальник до такой степени пунктуальный. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Неужели замок был построен в 14 веке? \_\_\_\_\_

19

**State whether *can* and *could* are INTERCHANGEABLE.**

**Note:** *could* is never used to express current possibility

1. When you visit Los Angeles, you **could / can** stay with us.
2. I **could / can** skate by the time I was 3.
3. He **couldn't / can't** have foreseen the problems.
4. You **couldn't / can't** get married in this country unless you're 18.
5. There's something strange. I **could / can** hear some footsteps.
6. **Could / Can** you step aside, please?
7. - He's broken the engagement.  
- **Could / Can** he be so light-minded?
8. I **couldn't / can't** bear the noise any more. Ask the children to calm down.
9. -What's wrong about me?  
- I think you **could / can** smile more.
10. But for the dog the burglar **could / can** have intruded into the house.

11. – **Could / Can** I use your mobile?  
– Of course you **could / can**.
12. We **could / can** go to the disco if you like.
13. **Could / Can** they have failed to make the presentation?
14. The meeting on the boat was dangerous. But I knew Jimmy **couldn't / can't** have been the target.
15. – Why didn't you help me? You **could / can** have tried to influence the situation, I believe.

**20** Use the appropriate form of the **INFINITIVE** after *can/could* in the following sentences.

**a)**

1. Old Rudolph proved quite definitely by demonstration in court that a man couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ (hold) a bottle with his fingers in that position.
2. No one in the school can \_\_\_\_\_ (beat) him at tennis.
3. I could scarcely \_\_\_\_\_ (see) her in the darkness.
4. One of the court officials came to give me the suicide information and to say that I could \_\_\_\_\_ (go) home.
5. Let's just see what you can \_\_\_\_\_ (do).
6. Can Jodie \_\_\_\_\_ (lose) her parents as a child?
7. And how can you \_\_\_\_\_ (say) that you didn't notice me when I even asked you whether or not you wanted wine.
8. Good God, that sounds like an offer I can't \_\_\_\_\_ (refuse).
9. Is that your picture? But you can't \_\_\_\_\_ (paint).
10. Is that your picture? You can't \_\_\_\_\_ (paint) it.
11. Why can't I \_\_\_\_\_ (laugh) at his jokes?
12. It's odd – I cannot \_\_\_\_\_ (pin down - точно определить) exactly what it was. ... Just an impression that came through my mind.
13. She could \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) her cheeks burning as she went into the kitchen.
14. Sorry I'm late. Couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ (get) a cab.
15. Let me get you some towels and you can \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a shower.

**b)**

1. I don't believe it. Martin couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ (be) so cruel.
2. –Who on earth can it \_\_\_\_\_ (be)? Can Jane \_\_\_\_\_ (come) back yet?  
– I haven't the least idea. Go and see.
3. –We were being overheard.  
– We can't \_\_\_\_\_ (be). There was no sign of anybody.
4. 'How could I \_\_\_\_\_ (forget) you?' asked Cordelia dryly. 'You ring me every week. And three times at Christmas!'
5. Look at that crowd. Who could they \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) for?
6. – I like my life the way it is.  
– But you can't \_\_\_\_\_ (like) keeping people at a distance.
7. Bagel mewed. 'And how could you possibly \_\_\_\_\_ (be) hungry?' she asked. 'I gave you chopped liver for lunch. A cat who's been fed chopped liver can't possibly \_\_\_\_\_ (be) hungry.'

8. Bagel mewed again. She poured some milk into his bowl. Bagel sniffed the milk and walked back to the fridge. 'Oh, come on!' she cried. 'You can't \_\_\_\_\_ (want) anything else.'
9. You can't \_\_\_\_\_ (blame) us. We've had precious little to celebrate for 11 years.
10. She stood at the kitchen window and stared across the river. From here, she could \_\_\_\_\_ (see) the corner of her apartment building, the rest of it hidden behind the office block.

**21** Use the ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS for the Russian expressions in brackets.

1. Ash was small and fair, not dark and sturdy like Michelle, so (невозможно было принять их за сестер) \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I wonder if I (могла бы забежать) \_\_\_\_\_ and help with the clearing up. (to come round)
3. (Неужели ты видел) \_\_\_\_\_ the housekeeper that morning?
4. The murderer (не мог не оставить) \_\_\_\_\_ traces.
5. She turned impatiently on the pillow, finding the cat's stomach covering the face. She realized that she (не может дышать) \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Do you know, Hastings, I (не могу избавиться от ощущения) \_\_\_\_\_ that something was already said?
7. If my firm gets involved, (мне нельзя говорить) \_\_\_\_\_ about it.
8. – Ash supposed that Dan wasn't a flower person.  
– (Как же он мог им быть) \_\_\_\_\_ when he was a city suit.
9. Chris told her that her physiotherapist flat mate was treating his sore shoulder. (Как же наивна она, в самом деле) \_\_\_\_\_!
10. – (Не может быть, что это) \_\_\_\_\_ the same box. This is the first time I've had it out.  
– It belonged to Martin, didn't it? He showed it to me.  
– (Не может быть, что он показывал) \_\_\_\_\_ it to you, Olwen. He hadn't got it when you saw him last. (Неужели вы скрываете) \_\_\_\_\_ something?
11. Anyway she (не смогла бы поговорить) \_\_\_\_\_ about Alistair if she met Dan.
12. She (чувствовала) \_\_\_\_\_ the warmth of the day, the air humid and laden with the sent from the flourishing bush.

**22** TRANSLATE into English.

1. – Так ты уверен, что все хорошо? – Лучше и быть не могло (бы).
2. Ты встречаешься с тем, кто мог бы, вероятно, купить небольшой остров, если бы захотел.
3. Могу ли я заплатить кредитной карточкой?
4. Знаешь, ты можешь приходить в любое время.
5. Неужели ты никогда не болеешь?
6. Боюсь, что я еще не смогу дать вам определенный ответ к пятнице. Не могли бы вы зайти в понедельник?

7. Конечно, он чертовски хорош собой и богат, и с ним интересно быть, но не знаю, могла бы я провести с ним остаток жизни.
8. Молли была права. Эш, конечно, могла бы навестить ее на обратном пути в Дублин. Но она сказала, что у нее было много работы.
9. «Жаль, что мы не можем заполнить описание этого парня», – сказал раздраженно полковник Андерсен.
10. Я не буду есть всю коробку чипсов. Я не смогу заснуть, если съем много.
11. Но это же телячье жаркое, Джесси! Неужели ты приготовила это все в одном горшочке?
12. У вас будет бум. Вот увидите. И вы не сможете подавать чай достаточно быстро.
13. Не может быть, что эта девушка – ваша дочь.
14. «Мисс, на нашу дискотеку нельзя приходить в джинсах», – сказал швейцар.
15. С тех пор как у нас машина, мы можем путешествовать гораздо больше.

**23** Turn into INDIRECT SPEECH. Tell your partner about the questions you were asked at the job interview.

1. Perhaps you could tell me about your education?
2. We have a lot of applicants for this job. Could you tell me why you think you would be the right person for this job?
3. What could you do best when you were at school?
4. What foreign languages can you speak?
5. Can I ask you why you'd like to leave your present employers and join our company?
6. You can be a little young for this job, can't you?
7. What do you think your most valuable experience can be?
8. Can you lose your temper sometimes? Describe what happened last.
9. What problems have you been able to solve at your present job?
10. We are all human beings here... Can I ask you about your strengths and weaknesses?

**24** Are you curious about yourself? Give as complete answers as you can.

1. Could you agree to "strict discipline"?
2. Can you "start ball rolling" at a social gathering?
3. Can you confidently plan and work towards carrying out an event in six months' time?
4. Can you be a stabilizing influence when others lose their heads?
5. Can you get enthusiastic over "some simple little thing"?
6. Can you quickly adapt and make use of one of new conditions and situations even though they may be difficult?
7. Can you see the other fellow's point of view when you wish to?
8. Can you accept defeat easily without the necessity of "swallowing your disappointment"?
9. Could you allow someone to finish those final two words in a crossword puzzle?
10. Can you take a "calculated risk" without too much worry?

**Each positive answer is equal to 1 point.**

- Score 8–10 shows strong interest in life
- Score 6–7 shows little interest
- Score 4–5 shows very little interest
- Score 3–0 shows lack of interest

**25**  **Guess work. Read the article.**

It all happened on the train going from London to Brighton. In one particular compartment there were 4 men. One of them was an architect. By accident he left very important documents on the train.

**Who is the architect? Where does he live? Help the railway officials find him.**

**Make deductions using the modal verbs. Make use of the information:**

- Kevin lives to the left of the architect.
- Danny's neighbour is from London.
- The name of the man in number four is Oscar.
- Felix is from Manchester.
- The salesman and the fireman live next to each other.
- The architect lives in number two.
- The fireman is from Glasgow.
- The doctor's name is Kevin.
- The man from Brighton is an architect.

e.g. *The architect can't be Kevin because Kevin lives to the left of him*

	1	2	3	4
Name				
Home town				
Job				

**26**  **MAKE UP a short story describing your imaginary train journey. Say what you could've done in the suggested situation:**

*Once I happened to be travelling with a friendly family. They had three lovely rosy-cheeked playful little kids and a dog.*

*To begin with, when I boarded the train, I found out there was no room left for my suitcase. ....*  
.....  
.....  
.....

*Looking back, I still can't understand how I was able to survive that terrible night.*

**TEST YOURSELF: spot the error if any and correct it.**

1. The postman can't have ever brought the magazine to you. You bought it yourself, didn't you?
2. His innocence can't be proved. He is guilty.
3. Can't she be shy? She gives the impression of being self-assured.
4. We can't give you a pay rise this month.
5. – Could you open the door for me please? – Of course I could.
6. We are sure that by the end of this week the president can provide the victims of the earthquake with temporary shelter. It will be done in due time.
7. I was able to walk without crutches soon after the operation.
8. Can they have finished the project by next Friday?
9. They couldn't have went to school. Their rucksacks are in the study.
10. 'Your cat slept on my shirt,' he stated. Ash could have seen there were a few black hairs dotted on the cotton.
11. All my life I can't dance.
12. I hope I can work abroad when I leave school

# MAY

**28** ➤ **ARRANGE the sentences into two columns showing objective and subjective type of modality and TRANSLATE them into Russian.**

1. I might have known Dan would have a go at someone. I'm sorry it was you.
2. It may not have been the most cultured way to spend an evening, but she was enjoying it.
3. – Where did he spend the night?  
– He may have slept in the car.
4. The road was so slippery. I might have fallen down and broken my wrist.
5. I think he guessed that Crome's remark might have reached our ears.
6. I wonder if I might borrow your tent.
7. You may not speak until I say so.
8. May I take this bag into the cabin?
9. He may be at work now.
10. Do you have any idea who might have killed Walkman?
11. I may just as well give you a lift.
12. – Who may apply for the job?  
– Anyone 21 or older.

**29** ➤ **MATCH columns A and B. Choose the words nominating the aim of communication in the given sentences.**

A	B
1. – Why is the child crying? – He might've been punished.	a. reproach
2. You may hear the speaker from any corner of the room.	b. stating possibility
3. You're grown up enough. You might at least make your own bed.	c. asking for permission
4. She may have no particular feelings for him.	d. refusing permission
5. May I see the headmaster please?	e. request
6. May I have another day off?	f. prohibition
7. Passengers may not enter this area.	g. stating choice
8. You may not speak loud in the library.	h. giving permission
9. May I throw out your bag?	i. assumption
10. You might have broken my glasses.	
11. – Will Jim take her advice? – Well, he may or he may not.	
12. You may pass round the sandwiches now.	

**30** Express a greater **DEGREE OF UNCERTAINTY**.

1. Doris may have been taken to hospital.
2. It may be warm today.
3. He may find a job in two or three days.
4. She may have been working there all her life.
5. He may be staying at a hotel.
6. Judy may be wearing contact lens.
7. He may have had no time for his hobby.
8. You may have left your umbrella on a bus.

**31** What shows the **TIME REFERENCE**?

1. They might have opened the safe with a key.
2. She might be a successful business woman.
3. Might I have my car repaired here?
4. May I sleep on the sofa in the living room?
5. Bruce may not remember me.
6. The secretary may have posted the letter yesterday.
7. I might be late for classes tomorrow.
8. His friend may have taken the photo.
9. Jim might have had his jaw broken in a boxing match.
10. Joe may be playing golf now.

**32** Spot the errors if any and correct them. Focus on the difference between the forms **MAYBE** and **MAY BE**.

1. – There are times when I think you're either an honest man or a complete fool.  
– I maybe both.
2. – I'm certain Peter Randle didn't do it.  
– That may be, but it is immaterial.
3. It maybe too late to head for the bar.
4. Tony could've arrived at 5 or maybe later.
5. They maybe rather disappointed that I haven't got the job.
6. May be you want to borrow my guitar?
7. He may be have left work early that night.
8. – You will be interested to see the results.  
– May be I will.
9. She says she may be in Paris at Christmas.
10. – Will Steve marry Laura?  
– May be yes or may be no.
11. There maybe no baskets near the checkout at Chip's.
12. May be they have caught Jennifer's humour.

**33** Express **SUPPOSITION** about the following. Use the modal verb *may*.

a)

1. Why does Martha always look tired? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Kitty never answers the phone. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Ben is late today. \_\_\_\_\_



4. Ash never invited people to her home. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Bob didn't pick you up today. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Ross doesn't give back the money he borrowed last week.

7. Gabriel's parents don't give Ross any pocket money. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Nelly detests looking into people's eyes. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Judy and James are not on speaking terms. \_\_\_\_\_
10. The Robinsons didn't enjoy their holiday. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Donnie didn't sleep well that night. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Our patron is angry today. \_\_\_\_\_

**b)**


1. My boyfriend didn't like the film. \_\_\_\_\_
2. The boss has called Holly up in the office. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The burglars got into the room in no time. \_\_\_\_\_
4. She has dark areas under her eyes. \_\_\_\_\_
5. He has a scar over his left cheek. \_\_\_\_\_
6. There was a bus crush at the traffic lights this morning. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Nancy is not at work today. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Our manager looks terrific today. \_\_\_\_\_
9. I hate travelling by train. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Alistair has committed suicide. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Betsy has been keeping silence since morning. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Patrick's hand is bandaged. \_\_\_\_\_

**34** **ANSWER the questions expressing different degrees of certainty (use *may* or *might*).**

1. Where do you think your bosom friend is now?
2. In your opinion, where was he at 8 p.m. yesterday?
3. What do you think your mother is doing now?
4. I hear your neighbour has bought a Ford. How did he/she manage to buy such an expensive car?
5. How much do you think the "Nokia" Smartphone costs?
6. Where will you be in 5 years?
7. Who of you will be a teacher?
8. What will women wear in the summer? What will be in fashion?
9. How old is Paul Newman do you think?
10. How long do you think it took to build the supermarket "Europe"?

**35** **Express REPROACH with reference:**

**a) to the present:**

You might  to stay with us.  
to speak in a low voice.  
to pay much more attention to me.  
to bring flowers to me more often.  
to buy a ring for me.  
to do something about the car.

**b) to the past**

You might



- to come in time.
- to pass the exam better.
- to inform the police about the accident.
- to invite me to the barbecue.
- to stay away from dessert.

**36** SAY how a wife *would /could* **REPROACH** her husband:

- for not taking her out;
- for not having passed his driving test;
- for taking extra work;
- for not taking extra work;
- for coming home late;
- for not having come home at all;
- for having come home tipsy the previous night;
- for not answering her calls.

**37** Have ever been **REPROACHED** by your parents? Write what they told you.

---

---

---

---

**38** CHOOSE between *might* and *may*. Sometimes both are possible.

**Note: Don't use *may* to express possibility in questions.**

1. You *might/may* not trespass this area.
2. Your client *might/may* be at the lawyer's now.
3. That's your mother's birthday. You *might/may* have come earlier.
4. *Might/May* I use your bike? – Certainly you *might/may*.
5. This cake *might/may* be a bit old but it still tastes good.
6. You're so careless. You *might /may have fallen* down.
7. You say you love animals. You *might/may* feed your cat regularly.
8. You *might/may* watch TV as long as you wish.
9. *Might/May* I have a part time job?
10. *Might/May* I speak to the shop manager, please?
11. *Might/May* I change my major?
12. When he changed his job he *may/might* have moved to another flat.
13. *Might/May* he succeed?

**39** Use the appropriate form of the **INFINITIVE** after *may (might)* in the following sentences.

1. She was treated, you know, with particular tenderness and consideration in that house. You may \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) why. She was badly injured when she was a child.
2. It might \_\_\_\_\_ (be) my fancy but it seems to me that she hesitated a second before answering.
3. "Why is your sister still single?" "She may \_\_\_\_\_ (not meet) a particular man yet."
4. Why didn't you tell us that you had met him before? You might \_\_\_\_\_ (put) us in an awkward position.
5. - Were the thieves looking for something? - They might \_\_\_\_\_ (look) for my collection of signatures.
6. Jenny was exited then and might \_\_\_\_\_ (not understand) that she was asking for the impossible.
7. If he hadn't sat with his back to the window, he might \_\_\_\_\_ (see) the butler on the doorstep.
8. Come to think of it, he wasn't even sure his nephew was called Harry. It may \_\_\_\_\_ (be) Harwey. Or Harold.
9. Mr. Dursley might \_\_\_\_\_ (drift) into an easy sleep, but the cat on the wall outside was showing no sign of sleepiness.
10. Be careful, he may \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a revolver.
11. She eyed his cloak suddenly as though she thought he might \_\_\_\_\_ (hide) Harry underneath it.
12. He might \_\_\_\_\_ (work) for a big insurance company now.
13. Here was a man who belonged to the McEnroes' class: the sort of man Ellie's mother might \_\_\_\_\_ (choose) for her.
14. - I'll give you all on one condition.  
- I might \_\_\_\_\_ (know) you'd say that.
15. The murder might \_\_\_\_\_ (take) place right around eleven o'clock in the morning.

**40** **REPHRASE** the following sentences:

**a) using the modal verb *may/ might*.**

1. Though it's pouring down, I suppose it will stop raining soon. It's June now.
2. Perhaps Jack's telephone number has slipped from her mind.
3. Maybe she doesn't know the way here.
4. It is possible that he will be discharged from hospital tomorrow.
5. Will you allow me to park my car in front of your house tonight?
6. Where could they be from?
7. Stanley was out last night. Perhaps he was celebrating his exam results.
8. Do you mind if I take your sharpener?
9. It's possible that he will take your advice on what to study at university.
10. I think she will never be rich.

**b) using either the modal verbs *may/might*, or their equivalents.**

1. Ralf may be more energetic than his brother.
2. It's possible that Donald should have passed his eye test.
3. He might have taken your wallet by mistake.
4. Will you allow me to use your coffee maker?
5. I suppose he was popular a few years ago, but not today.
6. May I see the manager, please?
7. Where might they be from?
8. He may be a reporter.
9. Perhaps they were delayed in traffic.
10. Do you mind if I leave work before 5?

**41** TRANSLATE into English using *may/might*.

**a)**

1. Я не позволяю тебе больше видеться с ней.
2. Вы позволите увидеться с Вами завтра?
3. Ну, ты мог бы увидеться со мной вчера. Что тебе помешало?
4. Может, мы никогда не увидимся.
5. Возможно, он и хороший доктор, но я не доверяю ему.
6. Возможно, водитель не поменял колесо.
7. Лучше прийти пораньше. На пристани может быть толпа.
8. А может быть, сестра вышла в это время из палаты.
9. Возможно, его не было в городе, когда произошло несчастье.
10. Они, может быть, уже подъезжают к дому.
11. Они, может быть, уже подъехали к дому.
12. – Можно я съем мороженое? – Нет, не смей. У тебя завтра концерт.
13. Будь рядом. Я чуть не упала.
14. Андрей, может быть, совсем и не в России сейчас.
15. Ты мог бы звонить своим родителям хотя бы раз в месяц. Жаль, что ты такой невнимательный.

**b)**

1. Я нашел камешек в хлебе и чуть было не сломал зуб.
2. Возьми карту. Ты можешь потеряться.
3. Эш решила: «Можно пойти домой и понежиться в горячей ванне вместо этого».
4. Где ты был все эти годы? Мог бы хоть строчку черкнуть.
5. В приступе маниакального гнева миссис Крейл нанесла Анжеле травму, когда та была еще ребенком. Возможно, этим объясняется то, что Анжела имела зуб на Каролину Крейл.

6. Джоди настаивала на том, чтобы Эш пошла в ресторан и посмотрела бы, чем там кормят. «Может, это натолкнет тебя на новые идеи».

7. Грэг постоянно жаловался на судьбу. Чего же он хотел? Возможно, он хотел большую семью. Почему у них только двое детей? Могли бы иметь троих или четверых.

8. В это время в магазине находилось двое мужчин. Каждый из них мог оказаться убийцей.

9. Ты мог бы разговаривать со своей сестрой более приятным тоном.

10. Она подумала, что может обвинить его в том, что он превращается в фанатика.

11. Их можно было бы с успехом принять за давно женатую пару. Но они женаты только 2 года.

12. – Уолкеры продали дом?

– Возможно, они продадут его к концу месяца.

13. – Кто же вор?

– Только не Чарльз.

– А кто же? Позволено ли нам знать кто, или это большой секрет?

14. Возможно, он смог вспомнить, куда они спрятали план.

15. «Могу я поинтересоваться у Вас, почему Вы собираетесь выйти замуж за этого молодого человека?» – спросила Миссис Тауэр с ужасающей вежливостью.

#### **42** Make up DIALOGUES by analogy:

1.

– May I see my wife, doctor?

– No, you mustn't. She's asleep. You can't wake her.

– Then I may drop in next time.

– Do, please. She'll be delighted to see you.

2.

– Where are my keys, I wonder?

– You might have left them in your bag.

– No, I never carry them in the bag.

– Then you might've lost them.

#### **43** Write a paragraph about an unlucky day you might have had.

*Это был ужасный день. Я чуть не разбила очки. У отца едва не украли машину. Более того, я чуть было не сломала ногу. И в довершение всего, к нам могли забраться воры.*

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**44** Look at the picture. Write your caption for the cartoon and make assumptions using *may/might*.



---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**45** TEST YOURSELF. Spot the errors and correct them if any.

1. Don't throw away old books. You might have wanted them for your children.
2. Tony might haven't climbed to the top of the Statue of Liberty when he was in New York. His knee was very sore.
3. – Might I use your pen?  
– Of course you might.
4. – Where is Pam?  
– She might got stuck in a traffic jam.
5. – Is he waiting for you? – I'm not sure. I called earlier, but he may not have received my message.
6. Stacy maybe Ricky's sister
7. I'm afraid the mail may late today.
8. You may have informed us about the car accident. I wish you had done it.
9. – Caroline was showing off.  
– May be she was.
10. Dan might spent the weekend with Cecelia. He had meant to do it for long.
11. Your personal things might not be left here. (*Prohibition*)
12. Your aunt may needs a ride home from the station. I'm at your service.

# CAN – MAY compared

**46** Study the chart and specify the DEGREE OF FORMALITY by putting (+) in the right column.

**Note:**

asking for permission	giving permission	refusing permission
<i>can</i> – informal, friendly <i>could</i> – more polite <i>may</i> – formal <i>might</i> – more formal	<i>can</i> – informal  <i>may</i> – formal	<i>can't</i> – informal  <i>may not</i> – formal

	meaning	infor- for- mal, friend ly	mo re po- lite	for mal	mor e for mal
1. Can I speak with you for a minute? 2. Could I speak with you for a minute? 3. May I use your watering pot? 4. Might I use your lawn mower? 5. May I turn off the radio? 6. Can I give him your address? 7. Might we invite you to dinner, Mr. Barr? 8. You can move the vase so that the dog shouldn't break it. 9. You can't give him my phone number. 10. You may not open the letter until he comes. 11. – Could I try on that wig? – Of course you can. 12. Cars may be parked here. ( <i>written notice</i> )	<i>Asking for permission</i>	+			

**47** Make up situations to JUSTIFY the meanings of the modal verbs.

- a) Can I have pouched eggs for supper?  
b) May I have pouched eggs for supper?
- a) Can I send a telegram?  
b) May I send a telegram?
- a) Can I see my sister, doctor?  
b) May I see my sister, doctor?

4. a) Can I take your book?  
b) May I take your book?
5. a) Can I go out without putting on warm clothes?  
b) May I go out without putting on warm clothes?

**48** Use the appropriate form of the **INFINITIVE** after *can/could* and *may/might* in the following sentences.

1. You have no sense of proportion, Hastings. We cannot \_\_\_\_\_ (catch) a train earlier than the time it leaves.
2. -Who is your father? - You might \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) of him. He's Joss Morland.
3. You might as well \_\_\_\_\_ (know), Robert, that Olwen is in love with you. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ (be unaware) of it?
4. He didn't mind being in debt. For him he could cheerfully \_\_\_\_\_ (go on) being in debt. Money simply didn't matter.
5. I was promised a meeting with Getcliffe of whom you may \_\_\_\_\_ (hear).
6. - And do you know who told him that you'd taken the cheque?  
- I can \_\_\_\_\_ (guess) now. Brendan might \_\_\_\_\_ (take) it.  
- Can he \_\_\_\_\_ (do) it? He told me that Maurice had taken that cheque.
7. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ (afford) to have my nails manicured by a professional. I'll have to do it myself. It might \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) very difficult.
8. The cheque wasn't there. It could \_\_\_\_\_ (be taken) to the bank and cashed.
9. - Has Mr. Blackhouse turned up yet? - I'm afraid not. He might still \_\_\_\_\_ (sign) his books in the shop.
10. That was a lucky escape. The car might \_\_\_\_\_ (crash).
11. In her heart she feared that Margo might \_\_\_\_\_ (be) right. She was no longer sure of anything.
12. - I can't \_\_\_\_\_ (find) Fill. Where on earth could he \_\_\_\_\_ (be)? - He might \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the bank.

**49** **REPHRASE** the sentences using *can* or *may*.

1. Maybe there had been someone in her life in the past.
2. It's doubtful that the company should be bankrupt.
3. Maybe it will be the last time she will do their job for them.
4. I don't believe that Kathy's got used to being alone.
5. Is it possible that the boy didn't feed the fish?
6. I find it incredible that our nurse should've opened an account of her own.
7. Maybe I'm crazy, but I don't think marriage is for everybody.
8. I think that perhaps having the bonfire was not such a good idea.
9. Will you allow me to sell some stock?
10. Take care! You nearly smashed the shop window.
11. Maybe I can persuade her.



**50** Use the ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS for the Russian expressions in brackets.

1. I (могла бы жить) \_\_\_\_\_ here and cook pizza and pasta for the rest of my life and I'd be happy.
2. She didn't want to meet Dan. She was afraid that he (мог бы спросить) \_\_\_\_\_ her about Alistair and she (не смогла бы говорить) \_\_\_\_\_ about him.
3. I (возможно, пытался) \_\_\_\_\_ too hard to be a settled sort of person.
4. She (не могла представить) \_\_\_\_\_ herself climbing the Himalayas or sailing single-handedly round the world. But Julia (возможно, смогла бы) \_\_\_\_\_ do it.
5. I hope one day, I (смогу путешествовать) \_\_\_\_\_ where I want.
6. We (могли бы повысить цены) \_\_\_\_\_, you know. But I suggest we shouldn't do it. The risk outweighs the advantages.
7. (Неужели ты не можешь изменить) \_\_\_\_\_ the date of your wedding? But I'm sure you (сможешь) \_\_\_\_\_ if you want to be flexible.
8. Dan rubbed the neck. (Он, пожалуй, снимет дом) \_\_\_\_\_ because he still intended to come here some day.
9. Yet he (не мог сказать) \_\_\_\_\_ her the truth. He'd never lied to her before but he felt he (не мог бы разговаривать с ней) \_\_\_\_\_ now.
10. Our football team (могла бы выиграть) \_\_\_\_\_ the match, but they didn't try hard enough.
11. (Неужели это ожерелье носила) \_\_\_\_\_ the heroine of the film? (Возможно, оно дорогое) \_\_\_\_\_. But (Ден может его позволить) \_\_\_\_\_. Besides if this film wins an Oscar, (это ожерелье может оказаться) \_\_\_\_\_ valuable.
12. He is rich and if she let the relationship with him develop, (ей, возможно, никогда бы не пришлось беспокоиться) \_\_\_\_\_ about money again.
13. His secretary looks so young. (Не может быть, что у неё трое детей) \_\_\_\_\_.
14. (Я никогда не умела) \_\_\_\_\_ drive a car.
15. ( Не может быть, что она не заработала) \_\_\_\_\_ enough money for the camera.

**51** Choose the proper MODAL VERB. More than one verb may be correct.

Note:

<b>Request:</b>	<i>Can/Could you</i> <i>Can/Could, May/Might I (not May/Might you)</i>
-----------------	---

1. **May / Might / Could** you speak up a bit? I **can / could / might** hardly hear you.
2. **Could / Can / Might** you make me some coffee?
3. **Could / Might / May** I borrow your glasses?
4. – **Might / May / Could** I use your opera glasses?  
– Certainly you **can / might / may**.

5. Her parents allowed her to do many things. She **could / might / was able to** play in the yard for a long time.
6. Rubbish **might not / may not / could not** be left over here.
7. You **may not / can't / could not** enter the room until you're asked.
8. **Can / May / Might** you help me with the plugs?
9. We **could / can / might** telephone for help.
10. **Could / May / Might** you wait for the emergency service to answer?
11. **May / Can / Could** I have a look at it?
12. It's a secret. You **can't / couldn't / might not** tell anyone.
13. I **couldn't / might not / can't** lend Molly my alarm clock because I needed it myself that morning.
14. I **may / might / could** work in a restaurant. I must earn some money before I go to university.
15. He **may / might / can** be living in a little village and sharing a cottage with some friends.

**52** ➤ **FILL IN the modal verbs *can/could/can't/couldn't* or *may/might*.**

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ be serious about marrying Jane! I can't believe it.
2. –How old is your aunt? – She is about 50 or she \_\_\_\_\_ be a bit older.
3. – Have another try. You \_\_\_\_\_ win the lottery.  
– Well, I \_\_\_\_\_, but it's not very likely, is it?
4. Hello, everyone. This is Rob. \_\_\_\_\_ I have your attention just for a minute?
5. It was very quiet. Julia \_\_\_\_\_ hear the murmurs still coming from the classroom.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ I drive you to the University? It's on my way.
7. The temperature here \_\_\_\_\_ sometimes reach 45 C in January.
8. Take more money. You \_\_\_\_\_ run out.
9. Jodie wanted enough money to live on. Enough so that she \_\_\_\_\_ have spare time for voyages.
10. I thought you \_\_\_\_\_ be in our city these days. \_\_\_\_\_ I see you on Easter Day or maybe on Saturday?
11. You \_\_\_\_\_ not always respect his judgment, but you \_\_\_\_\_ not help liking him.
12. 'I thought you \_\_\_\_\_ have improved a bit,' said Michelle dryly. 'But I'm not so sure any more.'
13. "Do you mean Mrs Montserrat took too much of the medicine? \_\_\_\_\_ that have been simply accidental?" "No, she \_\_\_\_\_ never have made such a mistake."
14. Though it was nearly midnight Joe hoped Andrew \_\_\_\_\_ be still waiting for him.

**53** ➤ **TRANSLATE into English. Focus on *can/could, may/might* and their equivalents.**

1. Можешь ли ты представить себе, чтобы я всю оставшуюся жизнь прожила с таким человеком, как Киран (Kieran)?
2. Я одинокая женщина под тридцать. И сегодняшний вечер может оказаться тем самым вечером, который навсегда изменит мою жизнь.

3. Его бабушка и дедушка некогда жили недалеко от моей деревни, так что Крис, возможно, мой далекий родственник.
4. Посмотри на эти ковры. Какой из них мог бы понравиться моей жене?
5. Возможно, она написала эту записку второпях.
6. Не считайте за труд, подвезите меня до станции.
7. Я думаю, вы могли бы предупредить меня, что не придете.
8. «Можно мы посмотрим телевизор?» – спросила Пола отца. «А вы не можете хоть когда-нибудь почитать книжку?» – сказал Боб раздраженно.
9. Я надеялась, что, может быть, в этот раз мне удастся не пойти на ее вечеринку.
10. Может быть, я смогу отговорить ее от этого.
11. Джоди поспешила вверх по ступенькам в здание Четмана мимо кучки курильщиков, которым не разрешалось курить внутри здания.
12. Неужели он еще не поговорил с Росс Фероном о своем переезде?
13. Может быть, она не назвала ему свое имя, но она была почти уверена, что сделала это.
14. Может быть, он и скучал по Корделии, но это не мешало ему наслаждаться вечеринкой.
15. – Несколько минут назад я видела его в гараже. Возможно, он там меняет колеса.  
– Да не может он их менять целый день!

54



**Look at the picture and answer the questions.**



1. Can the little girl have “bad” parents? Can the parents have lost the art of controlling the child’s behaviour? Or she might be just a little brat?
2. Can kids be taken to dinner parties?
3. If so, what inconveniences and discomfort can they cause?
4. Can children be anybody’s idea of fun at the party?
5. Can some cafes/trains/buses display signs that read: “No Children and Dogs”?

**55** Work out QUESTIONS to match the answers.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

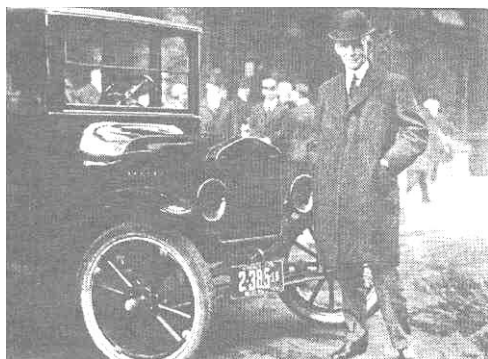
1. No, you mustn't. She's asleep.
2. Of course not. You mustn't go out without your coat.
3. By no means. You can't remind her about it.
4. Do, please, you may discuss it with your mother.
5. No doubt about it. She'll be delighted to see you.
6. Sure. But you can't stay there long.
7. Yes, please. There might be some in the fridge.
8. Of course you can. It must be in the glove box.

**56** Read the passage. a) Analyse the meaning and the function of the modal verbs; b) translate into Russian; c) express your attitude.

*In many countries of the world cannabis has been actively legalized. Cannabis is a powerful mind-bending drug which **may** as well cause schizophrenia and **can** certainly trigger it where it is latent. A growing number of doctors suspect that a sharp increase of schizophrenia among the young **may** be linked with cannabis use.*

**57** Look at the photo.

*THE MAN IN THE PHOTO HAD A DREAM TO BUILD A CAR THAT MANY PEOPLE COULD AFFORD.*



Say:

- Who could the man be?
- What can he be?
- What might he be doing?

Note:

An American industrialist, the founder of the **Ford Motor Company** (1863-1947). Although he did not invent the automobile he developed and manufactured the first automobile that many middle class Americans could afford.

As the owner of the FMC, he became one of the richest and best-known people in the world.

**TEST YOURSELF: spot the errors if any and correct them.**

1. We have found a leather belt. It might have had fingerprints.
2. Even if she was there, it was hard to find the girl. There were heaps of other places the kidnapper might have taken her to instead of Baltimore.
3. Donald Fraser might have arrested for the murder of Betsy Barnard if it hadn't been for the warning letter of ABC.
4. Can he has been as handsome as his photographs?
5. He couldn't have put the revolver in the glove compartment, I would have noticed it.
6. I wonder if I might just take the photograph of the clock.
7. Bob looked at the girls. He thought that they can't carry weapons as their pants were too tight.
8. He looked at the sad face of his wife and wondered, 'How could I possibly have made her smile?'
9. A few minutes later he ran quickly upstairs and managed lock her in. At last he felt free.
10. It might happen that someone entered the shop just as the murderer was leaving.
11. The housekeeper might not have heard the doorbell because she was watching TV in her room.
12. They may have been able to invite experts to examine the project.

# MUST

**59** ARRANGE the sentences into two columns showing objective and subjective meanings of *must*. COMMENT on the pragmatic meaning of the situations.

1. I really **must apologize**. I thought I had my wallet with me.
2. I **must have dialed** the wrong number. Sorry.
3. You can't come in here. You **must be** a member of the club.
4. You **must see** the film "My Fair Lady". Audrey Hepburn stars there.
5. San Francisco Bay **must be** one of the greatest natural harbours in the world and is the gateway to the Orient for trade and travel.
6. 'You **mustn't come** home late,' said Brenda's mother.
7. You **must be** a US citizen to vote.
8. It's pretty obvious that you don't approve of the students. Although you **must have been** one yourself once, **mustn't** you?
9. Her irritation continued. She thought 'I **must get** out of here'.
10. Basil **must have been highly excited** and his voice was shrilling with emotion.
11. You're about the same height and built as the dead man, aren't you, and you **must have been wearing** a woolen scarf round your neck just as he was.
12. He couldn't help noticing the regulation "All participants **must wear** their identification disks".

**60** TRANSLATE into Russian.

a)

1. He must call her.
2. He must be calling her.
3. Kate is the girl who must show them to their rooms.
4. Erna is the girl who must be showing them to their rooms now.
5. Sally must be sharing her room with lots of people.
6. We must wait for some minutes because the delegates haven't come yet.
7. Bob's parents must have been waiting for him for about an hour. What's up?
8. Bob's parents must have been waiting for him for about an hour before he turned up.
9. He must be studying English at Lexicon College.
10. He must've studied English at Lexicon College.

b)

11. She may be embarrassed.
12. She must be embarrassed.
13. They look upset. Something bad must have happened.
14. They look upset. Something bad might have happened.
15. Don't serve steak tonight. Helen may not eat meat.
16. Don't serve steak tonight. Helen must not eat meat.
17. She must have been, when young, a pretty woman. How old is she now?
18. – And this must be Cordelia? – Actually, no, Honor. This is Ash.
19. Wow! You have guessed! You must be very intellectual.
20. Margaret isn't here. She might have forgotten, or she could be stuck in traffic.

**61** Translate into English.

1. «Разве вы не едете в Лондон?» «Ерунда», сказал Алекс, смеясь. «Вы, должно быть, меня неправильно поняли».
2. Вы должны поговорить с Бредом. У него проблемы.
3. Ребенок, вероятно, спал, когда начался пожар.
4. Джон рисует картину, должно быть, уже полгода. Пора бы её показать нам.
5. Мы должны установить место и время встречи.
6. Он подумал про себя: «Как гость, я должен принести семье подарок, как мы это делаем в нашей стране».
7. У Клайда новые ножницы, и он, очевидно, подстригает кусты сейчас.
8. Мартины, должно быть, уже на корабле.
9. – Когда София сделала эти снимки?  
– Вероятно, она их сделала прошлым летом.
10. – Ник сейчас обедает?  
– Нет, скорее всего, он завтракает. Он только что встал.
11. – Неужели Бесс не купила орхидею? Почему?  
– Должно быть, у неё было туго с деньгами.
12. Они, вероятно, ссорились, когда вошла служанка.
13. Вы не должны пренебрегать правилами. Вы должны следовать дресс-коду.
14. Я думаю, девушка должна быть замужем после 25 лет.
15. Девушка, должно быть, замужем. Она носит кольцо.

**62** Translate into English. Compare the use of *must* and *may* in their SUPPOSITIONAL meaning.

1. Цветы завяли. Муж, должно быть, забыл поливать их.
2. – Я слышала, Джек купил хороший компьютер. – Он, возможно, нашел новую работу.
3. – Интересно, где Билл? – Я точно не знаю, но, возможно, он наблюдает за птицами в саду.
4. – Где Ник? – У него есть немного свободного времени, так что он, скорее всего, смотрит новости по телевизору.
5. – Дейзи в прекрасном настроении последнее время. – Очевидно, она опять влюбилась.
6. – Машины здесь нет. – Может быть, Роберт взял её.
7. – Новую секретаршу уволили. – Вероятно, она плохо работала.
8. – У мороженого какой-то необычный вкус. – Возможно, оно сделано с добавлением кокосового молока.
9. – Джон в библиотеке? – Может, там, а может, нет.
10. Министры иностранных дел встретились, но им, скорее всего, не удалось достигнуть успеха.
11. Говорят, растения могут чувствовать боль. – Возможно, это так.
12. Извините, я, вероятно, набрала не тот номер.
13. – Моя бабушка провалилась на экзамене по программированию.  
– Должно быть, это трагедия для неё.

**63** Translate into English focusing on NEGATION and FUTURE SUPPOSITION.

a)

1. a) Он не должен петь здесь. \_\_\_\_\_  
b) Должно быть, он не поёт здесь. \_\_\_\_\_
2. a) Он не должен приходиться сегодня. \_\_\_\_\_  
b) Должно быть, он не придет сегодня. \_\_\_\_\_
3. a) Ваши дети, должно быть, не поссорились. \_\_\_\_\_  
b) Не должны ваши дети ссориться. \_\_\_\_\_
4. a) Ты, должно быть, не учитель английского. \_\_\_\_\_  
b) Ты не должен быть учителем английского языка. \_\_\_\_\_
5. a) Она не должна следить за ним. \_\_\_\_\_  
b) Она, должно быть, не следит за ним. \_\_\_\_\_
6. a) Вы не должны говорить по-английски. \_\_\_\_\_  
b) Должно быть, он не будет говорить по-английски там. \_\_\_\_\_
7. a) Должно быть, вы не поставили цветы в вазу. \_\_\_\_\_  
b) Вы не должны ставить цветы в эту вазу. \_\_\_\_\_

b)

1. Должно быть, ему не удалось стать вегетарианцем.
2. Лиза плачет. Должно быть, ей не хочется ложиться спать.
3. Дэн и Дэбби, вероятно, никогда не любили друг друга. Они вечно ссорятся.
4. Патрик, должно быть, никогда не курил, не пил, не играл в азартные игры.
5. Билл должен жениться на Сюзане. Но, вероятно, женится на ней Стив. Хотя он, должно быть, в прошлой серии женился на Бритте. Я заметила кольцо на её пальце.
6. Фотография, опубликованная в журнале, вероятно, не была подлинной.
7. Скорей всего, Дженни пригласит на вечеринку много людей.
8. – Что вы решили делать с садом?  
– Мы, очевидно, продадим его.
9. Мы вызвали полицию. Они, должно быть, приедут в течение нескольких минут.
10. Очевидно, мне не повысят жалование, и я уйду с работы.
11. На следующий год, по всей видимости, она не сможет позволить себе большую и более комфортабельную квартиру.
12. Джимми думал позвонить ей и извиниться, но от этого, вероятно, будет еще хуже.
13. Он, по всей видимости, поедет в Китай, чтобы встретиться с неким Джулиусом Гор-Эквартом.
14. Мой дорогой Роберт, вы, вероятно, никогда никому не доверяли.
15. Скорей всего, мы никогда больше не увидимся.

**64** Use the appropriate form of the INFINITIVE.

1. This message must \_\_\_\_\_ (get) through at all costs.
2. As Megan watched, she realized that the boy must \_\_\_\_\_ (see) the accident in closer detail than even his father had thought.
3. You will forgive, my friend, but I must \_\_\_\_\_ (satisfy) myself on that point.



4. It was a very strange watch. It had twelve hands but no numbers; instead little planets were moving around the edge. It must \_\_\_\_\_ (make) sense to Dumbledore, though, because he put it back in his pocket.
5. It was, I must \_\_\_\_\_ (confess), an enthusiasm of mine.
6. On Tuesday I must \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the dentist.
7. The death must \_\_\_\_\_ (occur) about nine to seven hours previously.
8. People who live abroad must \_\_\_\_\_ (miss) their friends and family.
9. It's snowing heavily. The village must \_\_\_\_\_ (be cut) off.
10. He had red eyes. He must \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV or reading much.
11. She has red eyes. She must \_\_\_\_\_ (cry).
12. I suppose they must \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) a lot of lies in those scenes. That's why that man was so angry.
13. But I think – if you don't mind – it must \_\_\_\_\_ (get) late. It's time we left.
14. Eva watched as an elegant, fair-haired woman walked to the table carrying a pot of coffee. She must \_\_\_\_\_ (be) Joss's ex-wife, she thought.
15. They must \_\_\_\_\_ (charge) much for the octopus tonight.
16. In a few minutes McEnroe will come, she thought at last. She must \_\_\_\_\_ (collect) herself.

**65** **REPHRASE the sentences using *must* if possible.**

1. – I'm afraid I've deleted the file. – It's probably still there somewhere.
2. Evidently he has some dark secret hidden here.
3. The day after New Year would probably be the most appropriate.
4. You can't demonstrate your status.
5. I feel it my duty to follow the rituals.
6. Most likely life on board those cruise liners wasn't so great for the staff.
7. I'm obliged to do something about it.
8. He'd probably been brooding over it day and night – he was that sort.
9. Obviously it was a tragedy for her.
10. I strongly advise that you should read 'Gone with the Wind'.
11. I'm almost sure you didn't like pastel pinks and blues.
12. They will probably sack you if you are caught making personal calls.

**66** **Use the ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS for the Russian expressions in brackets.**

1. The last few months (должно быть, были адом) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ for Dick's parents.
2. Those who want the benefits from our language courses (не должны говорить на родном языке) \_\_\_\_\_ in class.
3. '(Очевидно, у тебя странные отношения) \_\_\_\_\_ with him,' he said with sarcasm, 'if you don't know what he'd think about it.'
4. I (не должна отнимать [take up]) \_\_\_\_\_ too much of your time.
5. You (должно быть, думаете) \_\_\_\_\_ I'm stupid to have stayed with him all these years.
6. The fiasco (вероятно, произошло) \_\_\_\_\_ in March 1971.

7. In the North people (должны есть) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of meat in order to keep warm.
8. I must (по всей вероятности, произвела) \_\_\_\_\_ some ecstatic noise because the cabman jerked his head and examined me in the mirror.
9. It (должно быть, чудесно) \_\_\_\_\_ to have such happiness like this, Jim.
10. (Нам, вероятно, никогда не узнать) \_\_\_\_\_ what caused Jackson to leave New York.
11. (Он, должно быть, ничего не знал) \_\_\_\_\_ of Helen Monteith.
12. Waid's statement that he had had a talk over the telephone (скорее всего, было) \_\_\_\_\_ false.
13. (У неё, скорей всего, не было) \_\_\_\_\_ an alibi after all.
14. Participants of the program (должны тренироваться) \_\_\_\_\_ at least one hour three times a week.
15. – You are a smart young lady.  
– You (должно быть, преувеличиваете) \_\_\_\_\_.

#### **67** TRANSLATE into English.

1. Росс должен знать все о пропавших документах.
2. Эти грибы, скорей всего, ядовитые.
3. Нэнси Шарп, вероятно, преподает 30 лет уже.
4. Ей надо лучше следить за детьми.
5. Дора им мачеха. Но она, должно быть, хорошо следит за ними. Они всегда чистые и опрятные.
6. Они не сделали задание. Оно, по-видимому, было слишком трудным.
7. Подожди немного. Я должна купить что-нибудь на ужин.
8. Давай подождем ее. Она, вероятно, покупает что-нибудь на ужин.
9. Для его жены диагноз, должно быть, был страшным шоком.
10. По прибытии в аэропорт пассажиры должны пройти контроль
11. Я должна выглядеть отлично потому, что все будут хорошо одеты.
12. Им во время войны, должно быть, жилось очень трудно.
13. Я положила, должно быть, слишком много сахара в кофе.
14. Извините, вы, очевидно, голодны. А я как раз собиралась в магазин.
15. Мужчина слева от меня не шевелился. Должно быть, он спал.
16. Завтра они должны прийти и спасти ее.
17. Завтра они, очевидно, придут и спасут ее.
18. Вероятно, Дафна не поверила новости.
19. Они смеются, должно быть, над чем-то непристойным.
20. Вероятно, они говорили обо мне, т.к. услышал свое имя.

68



READ the story told by a country doctor and SAY

- a) who Milly must have been;
- b) what must have been happening. Give reasons, use *must* for assumptions.

*I don't remember what time it was, it **must've been** about midnight. I had just gone to bed after a very hard day when the telephone rang. It was an eccentric farmer. I had never met him before although I had often heard people talk about him. He seemed quite hysterical. "You **must come** immediately. Milly has had a bad accident," he shouted. I hadn't the slightest idea who she was but I knew I had to go.*

*It had been snowing heavily that day and I didn't know the way. I had been driving for at least an hour when I finally found his place. He was standing there waiting for me. It was clear he **must've been crying**. I **must admit** I was shocked when he told me he had put her in the barn.....*

(From "English in situations" by R.O'Neill )

69



Look at the picture.



**Write as many sentences as you can about what is happening, what has happened, what is going to happen next. Use *must, may* or *their equivalents* to express assumptions.**

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

70

TEST YOURSELF: spot the error if any and correct it.

1. I'm sure he must attempt to carry out his promise.
2. It must have happened sooner or later.
3. Did I write that? Did I? I must have going mad.
4. You mustn't to lock the door.
5. - I don't think he is hiding somewhere waiting for us.  
- He must be out on the island somewhere.
6. We may go out and search together. It's absolutely necessary.
7. 'How did she find it out?' Bob asked. 'Well, David must overheard the two of them talking.'
8. The next incident will evidently take place at Doncaster on September 11<sup>th</sup>.
9. I have made my own judgment of you today. You must not be a stupid man.
10. I'm almost sure of it. Somebody may be staying behind the curtains.
11. Thank you, doctor. Now I understand why I may give up smoking.
12. The post must have fail to arrive. There's nothing in any of the boxes.

# CAN – MAY – MUST compared

**71** ➤ COMPLETE the statements in accordance with the contextual and communicative meaning specified on the right.

1. Den's sister doesn't want to share the table. – <u>She must be selfish.</u>	supposition bordering on assurance
2. –Who's that? – _____	uncertainty
3. They had a wedding party in John's restaurant. – _____	supposition bordering on assurance
4. What's he going to do with all this money? – _____	circumstantial possibility
5. He says he spent three weeks in India. – _____	incredulity
6. I saw Paul and Dorothy in the pub yesterday. – _____	doubt
7. May I feed the hedgehog? – _____	prohibition
8. Oh, I've lost my money again! – _____	reproach
9. I'm trying to ring to Luis but there's no answer. – _____	supposition bordering on uncertainty
10. She's been married for 53 years. – _____	supposition bordering on assurance
11. Why should we go out tonight? – _____	preference
12. I fear lest I should miss the train. It leaves in twenty minutes. – _____	suggestion
13. I can't remember Dr. Smith's name. – _____	polite request

**72** ➤ RESPOND to the statements using *may, must* and the prompts.

1. He can't be at home. He never comes home so early.  
pub He may be in the pub.
2. You can't be Janet.  
Ruth. \_\_\_\_\_ I recognize you by voice.
3. It can't be 5 o'clock. It's dark.  
about seven \_\_\_\_\_
4. Don't cry. The disease can't be serious.  
a slight ailment \_\_\_\_\_

5. It can't be her dress.  
borrowed \_\_\_\_\_
6. They can't be in America now.  
left \_\_\_\_\_ .They speak German better.
7. That man can't be her husband.  
father \_\_\_\_\_
8. You can't have lost your wallet.  
table. \_\_\_\_\_
9. The young man couldn't have been a doctor.  
a butcher \_\_\_\_\_
10. The dog can't be barking just for nothing.  
heard \_\_\_\_\_
11. You can't be serious.  
joking \_\_\_\_\_

**73** **REPHRASE the sentences expressing different types of supposition with the help of *can/could, may/might, must.***

1. Perhaps she is in the office. \_\_\_\_\_
2. I'm sure the thieves broke in while you were out. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Maybe they will get married soon. \_\_\_\_\_
4. I don't think you are right. \_\_\_\_\_
5. I'm sure Mary always knew about his first marriage. \_\_\_\_\_
6. It's impossible that it is his second marriage. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Perhaps those beggars were witnesses. \_\_\_\_\_
8. It's obvious my husband was watching me. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Is it possible that they could have been working all night? \_\_\_\_\_
10. Maybe they were caught in the rain. \_\_\_\_\_
11. I doubt that it was his own passport. \_\_\_\_\_
12. I don't think that Dad will give up smoking. \_\_\_\_\_
13. I don't believe that she saw me. \_\_\_\_\_
14. It's impossible for it to be true. \_\_\_\_\_
15. It's incredible that your father should've raised no objection. \_\_\_\_\_

**74** **IDENTIFY the communicative meaning of the modal verbs and then write a synonymous expression.**

	<b>Communicative meaning</b>	<b>Synonymous expression</b>
1. Dad, can I use your car today?	<i>Asking for permission</i>	<i>May I...? Could I...?</i>
2. You must have your passport with you.	<i>instruction</i>	<i>It's necessary that...</i>
3. Betsy, can I give you a lift?		
4. You really must follow me.		
5. I must have slept most of the day.		
6. You mustn't say what's happening.		

7. I can't fill in this form.		
8. You can't borrow his car.		
9. The old woman can't have saved so much money.		
10. Can Chris have betrayed Jane?		
11. She might have been getting upset over nothing.		
12. I wish you hadn't climbed up the tree? You might have killed yourself.		

**75** Mark the **COMBINABILITY** of the modal verb with the infinitive.

He must	fail the exam tomorrow, I'm afraid starting the new job today. left the watch at home. enjoy the concert. lend her the money.	
She can	be attractive if she wishes. paint landscapes if she joins their course. have come, I hope. visit us when she is in Boston.	
Can you	lend me some money? not have sold the house? missed the train yesterday? really have your own business?	
Nelly can't	to have bought those snakes. advertise for cars. have changed her phone number. be losing her necklace.	
She may	not be able to come with us tonight. have fed our cat. See how hungry he is! have eaten less, but she didn't. have time to think it over. I'll wait. not be living next to the market now.	
He might	not have been at home all day long. have left some Coke for me. be out. You never know with him. have married her if she agreed to emigrate. have broken my vase. He should be more careful.	

**76** TRANSLATE the sentences and express different shades of **DISBELIEF** (doubt, surprise or assurance) about the statements.

- Должно быть, сейчас пять часов. —→ *It **must** be five o'clock.*  
– ***Can** it really be 5? It **can't** be five. It's too dark. It **might** be already about 6.*
- Элма, очевидно, была красавицей. – \_\_\_\_\_
- Неужели Стюарт ее жених? – \_\_\_\_\_

4. Не может быть, что Нелли дома. – \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
5. Мэрилин, вероятно, изучает английский давно. – \_\_\_\_\_
6. Может быть, ей не нравится Патрик. – \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
7. Скорей всего, Мартин продаст дом. – \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
8. Пегги, возможно, смотрит программу «Полиглот» сейчас. – \_\_\_\_\_

**77 IDENTIFY the sentences**

**a) with the greatest DEGREE OF CERTAINTY**

1. Their car broke down but they managed to get to town.
  - a) Can they have waved down a passing motorist?
  - b) They can't have waved down a passing motorist.
  - c) They must've waved down a passing motorist.
2. Patrick had to be treated in hospital.
  - a) He can't have had a very bad accident.
  - b) He must've had a very bad accident.
  - c) He might've had a very bad accident.
3. The caller hung up before I could ask him his name.
  - a) He might've dialed the wrong number.
  - b) He must've dialed the wrong number.
  - c) He may've dialed the wrong number.
4. Prices will go up in the New Year.
  - a) Some business will probably have to close up.
  - b) Some business may have to close up.
  - c) Some business might have to close up.

**b) with the least DEGREE OF CERTAINTY.**

5. The visitors have complained about the food.
  - a) They may be willing to sack the cook.
  - b) They might be willing to sack the cook.
  - c) They must be willing to sack the cook.
6. The car suddenly came towards us.
  - a) Something must've happened to the brakes.
  - b) Could anything have happened to the brakes?
  - c) Can anything have happened to the brakes?
7. He ought to buy a house now.
  - a) prices can go up
  - b) prices may go up
  - c) prices might go up
8. The windows have misted up and we can't see outside.
  - a) It might be raining.
  - b) Can it be raining?
  - c) Could it be raining?

**78** ANSWER the questions; use the appropriate modal verb (or its equivalent) to match the reason.

- Why is Emily out of sorts today?  
A. Who knows? She might've quarreled with her boy-friend.  
B. I'm sure she isn't. She must be thinking about where to spend the vacation.
- What is Monica?  
A. .... She acts and speaks as if she were.  
B. .... She's been keen on acting since childhood.
- Where are my gardening tools?  
A. You always leave them in the kitchen, so  
.....  
B. You never know where they are, they ..... OR  
.....
- Do you think he'll apply to a university for admission?  
A. It's difficult to say, he ..... or .....  
B. It's been his life-time dream, so .....
- Did he change his major after all?  
A. .... though I'm not sure; he's just fond of it.  
B. .... He realized it would be difficult to find a job in his field.
- How did Ann do in her Psychology exam?  
A ..... You never can say if she's going to be a success or to fail.  
B. .... She looked happy when I saw her.
- Why did he come last in the 4 hundred-metre race?  
A. .... He had just sat at home and studied maths.  
B. Who knows. ....
- Who is going to play the lead in "Macbeth"?  
A. .... No other actor can do it better.  
B. ...., but there are other actors who can portray the character wonderfully.

**79** EXPRESS your opinion on the following.

- I want Jeff to go down on his knees and apologize.  
– You must be joking.  
– Can he have hurt your feelings?  
– You must be willing to put him down a peg or two. (сбить спесь)  
– You can't be so angry with him.
- The plane took off an hour late.



3. Jane looks really happy today.
4. When Keith came home, her mother was very angry.
5. Why is that man over there looking at me?
6. I can't get into these trousers any more!
7. Suddenly the dog began barking.
8. They say George will be discharged from hospital tomorrow.
9. Some competitors dropped out.
10. The two friends never speak to each other again.
11. Jessica will never rush into important decisions. [she, irresolute]
12. I never buy anything I can't afford.
13. Jenkins succeeded in making his father change his mind.
14. There's a strange smell in the kitchen.
15. Danny slept through the thunderstorm.

**80** Use the appropriate form of the INFINITIVE.

**a)**

1. She was an actress, that woman. She must \_\_\_\_\_ (know) then what she meant to do.
2. What an affair! What a sensation the murder must \_\_\_\_\_ (cause)!
3. In the street he consulted his watch. 'With great haste, my friend, we might \_\_\_\_\_ (manage) to catch the 7.20. Let's dispatch ourselves quickly.'
4. The woman was found in a heap behind the counter. She was hit when she must \_\_\_\_\_ (reach) up to one of the shelves.
5. - How old is the earl?  
- He must \_\_\_\_\_ (be) in the late sixties or early seventies.
6. She felt as though she might \_\_\_\_\_ (burst) with joy. Her joy was almost delirious.
7. 'I think you might \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) me, Alan,' said Hughie sulkily, 'and not let me make such a fool of myself.'
8. - Can the police \_\_\_\_\_ (still, question) him?  
- No proof has been found so far.
9. The stolen icons can't \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) the country. There hasn't been any information from the Customs House yet.
10. Can he \_\_\_\_\_ (have) several bank accounts? Is he that rich?
11. She spoke with exquisite diction which gave rise to suspicion that some remote period in her youth she might \_\_\_\_\_ (have) trouble over dropping her h's.
12. It's odd. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ (pin) down exactly what it was. Just an impression that came through my mind.

**b)**

1. 'Haven't I seen you somewhere before?' It was a disturbing question. How could she \_\_\_\_\_ (see) by him if she saw only his back. 'Surely not.' 'I think I have. In the Union bar. Or the King's Arms? Did you use to drink there?' 'I might \_\_\_\_\_ (do).'
- she defended. 'Ah.' his face cleared. 'So you must \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a student as well, aren't you?'

2. The constable pointed out the railway guide. It was open at the right page for Andover and was lying face down. 'Seems as though the murderer must \_\_\_\_\_ (look up) trains to London. If so, it mightn't \_\_\_\_\_ (be) an Andover man at all.'

3. The stout lady was obviously tired of talking about the murder. She must \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a long day of it. 'It must \_\_\_\_\_ (be) very different last night,' said Poirot. 'You may even \_\_\_\_\_ (observe) the murderer enter the shop - a tall, fair man with a beard? I thought perhaps you might \_\_\_\_\_ (notice) him last night?' 'No, I can't \_\_\_\_\_ (say) I saw anyone of that description.' 'But you can't \_\_\_\_\_ (not see) him because ...'

I broke in on my cue. 'Excuse me, sir,' I said to Poirot. 'I think you might \_\_\_\_\_ (misinform). I was told the murderer was a short dark man.'

4. 'When the papers disappeared it must \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a great shock to you.' 'Oh, it was, sir. I'll never forget it.' I felt the man might \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) confused to have to remember the story and tell it often enough.

5. You might not always \_\_\_\_\_ (respect) Ted's judgment, but you cannot help \_\_\_\_\_ (like) him. You've both been hiding this all along. You may \_\_\_\_\_ (hide) other things now too.

### 81 Use the English EQUIVALENTS for the Russian expressions in brackets.

1. Well, we'd better leave you, Jack, alone for a bit. You (мог бы написать) \_\_\_\_\_ about yourself or your work. It's up to you.

2. Standing in front of him, it wasn't easy. He (должно быть, был) \_\_\_\_\_ six foot two or three, and even though she pulled herself up tall, he loomed over her shoulder.

3. - (Я не вижу никаких извинений) \_\_\_\_\_ for her.

- She fell in love with him, I suppose.

- Whatever our feelings are, we (можем держать) \_\_\_\_\_ them in decent control. And we (можем контролировать) \_\_\_\_\_ our actions. That girl had absolutely no morals of any kind. Possibly she (возможно, ее плохо воспитали) \_\_\_\_\_, but that's the only excuse I (могу найти) \_\_\_\_\_ for her.

- (Смерть мистера Крейла, должно быть, была) \_\_\_\_\_ a terrible shock to her.

4. Well, I guess you (вероятно, удивлены) \_\_\_\_\_ to see me here the third morning in a row.

5. And although I say 'he' all the time, we (не должны исключать) \_\_\_\_\_ the possibility of a woman being concerned.

6. (Не может быть, что она оставила) \_\_\_\_\_ her camera at the party. (Вероятно, вы увидите) \_\_\_\_\_ the pictures in tomorrow's newspaper.

7. 'This place isn't safe and there's a rumor Dorinda Dawes (возможно, была убита) \_\_\_\_\_.' 'Those kinds of rumors (могут повредить[hurt]) \_\_\_\_\_ the hotel very badly. (Не может быть, что Доринда приняла) \_\_\_\_\_ that death. The police believe she (могла (бы) и утонуть) \_\_\_\_\_.'

**82** Use the expressions from the box to FILL IN the blanks.

couldn't possibly have done	can stand
might as well tell	couldn't have done
must be hysterical	can't mean

OLWEN: I shot him.

GORDON: That's ridiculous, Olwen. You 1 \_\_\_\_\_ (никак не могла...) it.

ROBERT: She 2 \_\_\_\_\_ (должно быть...) or something. I believe people often confess to all sorts of mad things in that state, things they 3 \_\_\_\_\_ (не могли бы...).

STANTON: Olwen's not hysterical. She means it.

BETTY: But she 4 \_\_\_\_\_ (не может...) it – she murdered him. Can she?

STANTON: You'd better tell us exactly what happened now, Olwen, if you 5 \_\_\_\_\_ (можете...) it. And I 6 \_\_\_\_\_ (пожалуй...) you – before you begin – that I'm not at all surprised. I suspected it was you at the first.

**83** Fill in the appropriate MODAL VERBS or their equivalents. Alternatives are possible.

a)

1. 'The weapon wasn't found,' he said. 'Impossible to say what it \_\_\_\_\_ have been. A weighted stick, a club – any of those would fit the case.'
2. Then the murderer we are searching \_\_\_\_\_ just as well be a woman as a man.
3. He made an impatient gesture, 'One \_\_\_\_\_ not give way to the nerves.'
4. 'All this \_\_\_\_\_ be a terrible shock to you all,' I said. 'It seems quite unbelievable. Your daughter \_\_\_\_\_ have left her baby alone at the station.'
5. I heard the door close softly, as if someone had been watching, but that \_\_\_\_\_ - \_\_\_\_\_ have been the wind.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ she have had anything to do with the trouble at the hotel?
7. The restaurant \_\_\_\_\_ be a success. A lot of people visit it. The chief \_\_\_\_\_ pride himself on the quality of the food.
8. You \_\_\_\_\_ have learnt skating before you borrowed my skateboard.
9. No one \_\_\_\_\_ believe that she was there only three days and \_\_\_\_\_ to get her hands on that stolen necklace.
10. They \_\_\_\_\_ get married soon because he's bought a diamond ring.
11. Of course with my light skin I \_\_\_\_\_ take too much sun.
12. You \_\_\_\_\_ try asking your uncle for this sum of money. Why not?
13. – Where did your boyfriend propose? – In a hot air balloon. – That \_\_\_\_\_ have been exciting.

b)

1. As soon as he entered the hall he was confronted with regimentation. "All swimmers \_\_\_\_\_ take a shower before using the pool."
2. 'So last time you were in Torquay. That \_\_\_\_\_ have been lovely. By the way, you \_\_\_\_\_ have been quite near where the murder was – the ABC murder. It happened while you were down there, didn't it?' 'Er – yes.' 'It \_\_\_\_\_ have been exciting! Why,

you \_\_\_\_\_ have passed the murderer in the street! You \_\_\_\_\_ have been near him!  
'Er -yes. Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_,"

3. No matter what else was found to be true, Adam and Winifred \_\_\_\_\_ have had a secret relationship of some sort. It \_\_\_\_\_ have been strictly business relationship. Or it \_\_\_\_\_ have been a romantic relationship. But Nell still was not ready to believe it \_\_\_\_\_ have been true.

4. Michelle picked up a wallet of photographs. 'I thought you \_\_\_\_\_ like to see these,' she said. Ash took the photos and flocked through them. Her own father's genes \_\_\_\_\_ have been particularly strong, she mused, to have turned her into the blond in the family.

5. 'This place isn't safe and there's a rumor Dorinda Dawes \_\_\_\_\_ have been murdered.' 'Those kinds of rumors \_\_\_\_\_ hurt the hotel very badly. Dorinda \_\_\_\_\_ have taken that death. The police believe she \_\_\_\_\_ have drowned.'

6. - Everyone in the house knew of his habit to go for a stroll every evening.  
- And outside?

- I don't know what you mean by outside. The gardener \_\_\_\_\_ have been aware of it or not, I don't know.

- So you don't think a stranger \_\_\_\_\_ have been noticed?

- Not unless he looked - well, off his head.

- This man doesn't look off his head.

- So this man \_\_\_\_\_ have been spying out the land beforehand and discovered your brother's habit of taking an evening stroll.

- I doubt whether there are a lot of people what you \_\_\_\_\_ call wandering about at this time of year.

**84** Use the required MODAL VERBS (or their equivalents) with the appropriate INFINITIVES.

1. I thought that if he was fond of her she \_\_\_\_\_ (be) very nice. And he confirmed she was extremely nice.

2. Raymond West spoke with the ease of a well-known author who knows that he is a celebrity, that he \_\_\_\_\_ (venture) where other people \_\_\_\_\_ not.

3. Is your phone on? Richard \_\_\_\_\_ (try) to call us now.

4. I'm sure I \_\_\_\_\_ (find) us a bargain flight. Son, we'll be there as soon as we \_\_\_\_\_.

5. I don't know whether Kathy is guilty or not. She \_\_\_\_\_ (not do) it. Let's wait and see.

6. 'I \_\_\_\_\_ (apologize) for trespassing, Miss Greenshaw,' said Raymond West, as he advanced towards her.

7. You \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) biting your nails.

8. 'It's odd that the letter should mention the 21<sup>st</sup> of the month. Of course it \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a coincidence.' 'That is possible - yes.'

9. Funny, how she suddenly got the feeling again that Hugo \_\_\_\_\_ (be) in the house. Very strong. Yes, Hugo was upstairs waiting for her.

10. I \_\_\_\_\_ (do) something wrong all the time. My computer has crashed again.

11. To my mind beauty is something that \_\_\_\_\_ (buy).

12. When the snow storm stops we \_\_\_\_\_ (see) where we are.

13. 'There's someone on the phone with an urgent order.' 'It \_\_\_\_\_ (be) my boss's secretary.'

14. We are not married yet. You \_\_\_\_\_ (think) about our fiftieth anniversary.

15. If you graduate from this University, you \_\_\_\_\_ (get) a good job.

**85** **WORK ON YOUR OWN: translate into English and then back into Russian.**

1. – Извините, здесь нельзя парковаться. Предъявите, пожалуйста, ваше водительское удостоверение.

– Да, конечно ... Извините, не могу найти его. Должно быть, я оставил его дома.

2. – Неужели она приобрела попугая?

– Должно быть, да. Она расспрашивала меня, как ухаживать за попугаями.

– Как давно?

– Может быть, дней десять назад.

– Ты спрашивал ее, почему она интересуется?

– Возможно, и да. Не помню.

3. – Мне бы хотелось взглянуть на его последнее письмо.

– Позвольте спросить почему?

– Возможно, вы были последним человеком, который видел его живым.

4. – Полагаю, что частный детектив Мейсон может заняться этим расследованием.

– Хорошо бы. Возможно, это могло бы немного успокоить ее.

5. Возможно, он бывал несправедлив ко мне. Но несмотря на то, что люди могут говорить, Фремонт любил меня. И, должно быть, он был ослеплен ревностью.

6. – Неужели Мистер Стоун застрелился?

– Согласно утверждению докторов он не мог это сделать. И кроме того, если бы он покончил с собой, он бы оставил на пистолете отпечатки пальцев. А их не было.

1. – Excuse me, you can't park here. **Can I see** your driving licence?

– Oh, yes. ... Sorry, I **can't find** it. I **must've left** it at home.

2. – **Can she have bought** a parrot?

– She **must have**. She asked me questions about taking care of parrots.

– How long ago?

– Maybe ten days.

– Did you ask her why she wanted to know?

– I **may have**. I **can't remember**.

3. – I'd like to have a look at his last letter.

– **May I ask** you why?

– You **might have been** the last person who saw him alive.

4. – I think that private detective Mason **can take up** the investigation.

– I wish he would. It **might be able** to tone her down a bit. / It may be that it can tone her down a bit.

5. He **might have been** unfair with me. But regardless of what people **may think**, Fremont loved me. And he **must have been** completely blinded by jealousy.

6. – **Can** Mr Stone **have shot** himself?

– According to the testimony of the doctors Mr. Stone **couldn't have**. And what's more, if Stone had shot himself, he'd have left some fingerprints on the gun. There were none.

– Значит, это было убийство. И убийца, скорее всего, стер свои отпечатки пальцев. Но он положил пистолет поближе к телу. Он, очевидно, хотел, чтобы полиция нашла пистолет.

– **So** that was a murder. And the murderer **must have wiped** off his own fingerprints. But he placed the gun nearer the body. He **must have wanted** the officers to find the gun.

### 86 TRANSLATE into English

1. «Возможно, это и правда, – сказал я. – Но ты в самом деле хочешь, чтобы это было так?»
2. Мы должны делать то, что можем.
3. Арманда Вуазен (Armande Voizin) в некотором роде напоминает мне мою мать: яркие глаза, длинные волосы, которые, должно быть, были блестящими и черными в молодости, сочетание томительности и цинизма.
4. – Меня осенило, что и жертва и место могут выбираться в алфавитном порядке.  
– Может быть и так. Но с другой стороны, имя Аскер, возможно, было лишь совпадением.
5. Я все еще помню, как проснулся утром 25 июля. Должно быть, было около 7.30.
6. Возможно, они думали, что у этих троих был мотив убить пожилую леди.
7. – Вы еще не поймали маньяка?  
– Нет еще.  
– Он, должно быть, весь день бродит здесь по городу.
8. Может быть, у вас никчемный (good-for-nothing) отец, или мать, которая пьет – тогда бы у вас был повод жаловаться.
9. «Как это все могло случиться?» – спрашивала она себя.
10. «Все выглядит прекрасно», – сказал он, оглядываясь вокруг. – «Вы, должно быть, всю ночь не спали, переделывая все это».
11. Скорей всего, они продадут дом или, может быть, будут сдавать его внаем.
12. С момента аварии я не могу водить машину.

### 87 Work with the partner. Read the fact and the options, choose the one you think reasonable, comment on it, focusing on the use of modal verbs.

**FACT:** As soon as mothers have babies they all face the same dilemma: to go on with their work or stay at home and look after their babies. Psychologists claim that long periods spent away from parental care are harmful for the under-twos.

**Option 1.** Mothers can work and send their baby to a nursery (or a private nursery) and leave it with strangers (who may not love him/her).

**Option 2.** Mothers can be self-employed to do a part-time job and be able to organize their working hours.

**Option 3.** Mothers can have a child-minder.

**Option 4.** Mothers can rely on the baby's grandparents.

**Option 5.** The family can have a father at home (rely on paternity leave).

**88** DISCUSS different means of transport. Follow the model.

Model:

- It's a good idea to go there by car. We'll **be able to** stop and look at anything that interests us.
- But if we go by car, our journey **will probably** be very slow. And parking **can** be difficult.

**89** READ the information and SAY which of the prospects for Mr. James Vogl's future life you think most probable. Prove your point of view, use modal verbs.

*Mr. James Vogl, now 23, started gambling at the London school of Economics. He rarely went into college and did very little studying, spending most of his time gambling.*

- He will probably get a well-paid job and become a prosperous businessman.
- Obviously he will go bankrupt and finally go to prison for debts.
- Evidently he will take top prize in the World Poker Tournament, buy a flat in London and with his experience get a job in the city.

**90** READ the paragraph and the prompts, make up as many sentences as you can to EXPRESS SUPPOSITION about the reasons for the fact. Use modal verbs.



The former star of TV hospital drama ER George Clooney bought a 5 million 19<sup>th</sup> century villa in Laglio, an Italian village. Soon enough he was made an honorary citizen of the village.

**Prompts:** it was a reward for helping to boost their prosperity;  
he put the community firmly on the tourist map;  
he made a fortune for local businesses;  
the village is on more than 100 websites now...

---

---

---

---

---

**91** READ the extract from an article, WRITE as many sentences as you can about what might have caused a diplomatic incident that threatened to shadow Anglo-American relations.

### HOW A STOLEN LOCK OF RINGO'S HAIR CAUSED A DIPLOMATIC INCIDENT



On February 9, 1964 73 million Americans watched as Ed Sullivan from New York introduced a new era. “Ladies and Gentlemen, the BEATLES.” The audience of screaming girls erupted. Paul McCartney jokily counted in the band: “One, two, three, four, five...” and waggled his head through ALL MY LOVING.

The FAB FOUR looked like they were taking a saunter in the park as the world changed around their American debut. Just two days later they found themselves at the center of a diplomatic incident...

*If you are interested, read what really happened:*

Prime Minister Harold Wilson’s Government considered the Beatles to be perfect ambassadors for Britain and on this, the band’s first trip to the USA, a reception for them had been arranged at the British Embassy in Washington. There was a certain Beverly Markowitz (now Rubin), an 18-year-old Beatles fan, who had sneaked into the party with her DJ friend. Unnoticed, she cut Ringo’s hair all the way across the back with her nail scissors. Later Rubin was kept busy in an unusual way. She got letters from Beatles clubs asking her to give them a piece of hair. She was cutting her mother’s hair and sending it. She didn’t want to disappoint anybody. But she kept the original lock.



92

Work with the partner. Read the arguments for choosing teaching as a career. Express different degrees of certainty; label them from least to most probable. Use modal verbs.

- Teachers have long holidays.
- Teaching is money and power.
- It's a red-eye, sweaty-palm, sinking-stomach profession.
- Teachers are free to make their own mistakes.
- Teachers like to learn and ask questions.
- Teaching gives many real-world experiences to discover.
- The people grow and change in the presence of a teacher.
- Teaching offers love, love of learning, books and love for people.

93

Work with the partner. Read the article from the *Daily Express*, and (a) making assumptions suggest possible answers to fill in the gap in the article; (b), express your attitude to the facts.

Samantha Marson, 21, was arrested at Miami Airport after she placed her luggage on a security X-ray machine and told the screeners, ".....!"  
 Asked by the stunned security officials to repeat herself, she astonishingly made the same statement twice more.  
 Samantha, from Bridgenorth, Shropshire, was immediately detained and taken to jail. She faces to 15 years in prison.

---



---



---

94



READ the information and ANSWER the questions, use modal verbs *can, may, must*.

Every year thousands of people are killed on the roads. We usually focus our attention on the victims and their families. The impact (воздействие) on the drivers is largely ignored.

Do you think:

- drivers could drive away from the place of the accident?
- the driver's life can be torn apart?
- their own existence can change?
- they can accept what they did?
- they can live without blaming themselves?
- creating a new identity or changing the image can help them live as if nothing had happened?
- they can have right to be happy?
- the injury to their soul can be treated?

95

⊙ Work with partner. Read the information and SAY

a) how it could have happened that a burglar became a police officer;

b) if anyone like John Kelly could work as a teacher/a member of administrative staff, etc. Give reasons, use modal verbs *can, may, must*

*John Kelly, 34, became a police constable with Scotland Yard despite convictions for assault, burglary and car crime and obtained his £28.000-a-year post. On the whole, the man with such a long criminal history worked as a police officer for 3 years.*

**Prompts:** lied on his application form, the police suffered a crisis and turned a blind eye to minor assaults; a tip-off about the man's past was received too late; they failed to check his backgrounds; the man could have fallen through the computer system by giving the wrong address; appreciated the qualities; etc.

96

⊙ Work with the partner. Look at the picture. SAY what could have made the boy so happy and triumphant;



*If you are interested, read what really happened:*

### CAN IT BE TRUE?

David Hahn aged 16, created a nuclear reactor in the shed from smoke detectors, clothes brushes and paint snipped from clock dials.

Though the reactor failed to generate the nuclear energy, it contained the highly radioactive chemical elements.

The Geiger counter picked up radiation as far as five doors down the street.

The boy was arrested and put in jail while the police were thinking how they could charge him.

In the shed the authorities found radiation 1.000 times higher than normal background levels.

When he told the police where he had obtained the radioactive materials-the every day items and mail orders from Eastern Europe - they considered they had no real grounds to hold him and were forced to let him go.

Today, aged 27 and a sailor, David has one poignant ambition to be happy like when he was a kid. Why?

- a) **UNDERLINE** and **ANALYSE** the use of the modal verbs;  
 b) **ASK** some other questions of the same kind. Express different degrees of certainty in the answers.

### THE REALLY IMPORTANT QUESTIONS IN LIFE.

A couple of weekends ago I had a dinner party at my house, and the after-dinner conversation time was the perfect opportunity for Sally to tell us all about the new things she'd learned. Sally is one of those people who collect all kinds of information that's certainly interesting but may not be very useful. True to form, Sally announced, "Guess what I found out?"

We all groaned, for we knew what was coming next.



"What, Sally?" I said tolerantly.

"Well, I've been reading this fascinating book called *Imponderables*. You know, puzzling questions that you can't explain precisely but that we all wonder about? I found out some really neat things. Want to hear about them?"

"Everybody'd better get themselves some soda and a snack," I said.

"This could take a while."

"OK. Here's the first thing I learned. Now, I'm going to ask you these questions, and we'll see how many you can answer. Ready?"

"Ready!" we all chorused.

"OK. First question. Why don't cats like to swim?"

"They must be afraid of water," Scott said "Or at the very least they must not like it much."

"That can't be the reason," Nan said. "It's too obvious."

"Nan's right," Sally answered. "Everyone thinks cats are afraid of water. But that's not it."

"It might be because they're lazy. They know they'll have to clean their coats." Mary volunteered.

"Right on, Mary!" Sally said "That's pretty much it. Cats are fanatics about keeping themselves clean. And they *are* basically lazy. They don't like to swim because they know it'll take too long to get their coats clean and dry."

"OK," I said. "Not bad. What's your next question?"

"Next question: Why in some cultures do people dress baby boys and baby girls in different colours? And why boys in blue and baby girls in pink? You've got to go back in history to answer this one."

"Hmm," Marilyn mused. "I don't know about why pink and blue specifically, but they might have started using different colours just to tell boys and girls apart."

"That's absolutely right. They did." Sally answered. "And so what about blue and pink?"

"Well," said Jim, "They may have thought that certain colours were luckier than others. Is that part of it?"

"Yep. People thought that babies needed to be protected from evil spirits. And they thought blue was the strongest colour because it was the colour of the sky, and the sky was associated with heaven."

"But," Jim said, "Why did boys get the blue?"

"That's easy enough to answer," Nan said. "They must have felt boys had more status, so they got the strongest colour. They really couldn't have chosen any other colour if the blue was the strongest."

"That's it," said Sally. "As for girls, it's not so clear. But people in those times must not have thought that evil spirits would bother girls, because it was several centuries before girls got their OWN colour. When girls did get a colour, it was because legend taught that girls were born inside of pink roses."

"Very interesting," said Bob. "What else, Sally?"

"Why are there so few women pilots on commercial airplanes?"

"There may not be enough jobs to go around," I said.

"No, that's not it. There are lots of jobs." "Easy," said Marilyn. "It's got to have something to do with gender stereotypes. People have traditionally thought that women aren't capable of flying airplanes."

"That's part of it," Sally said. "But there's more to it than that."

"Could it have something to do with military experience?" Jim queried. "Back when they started, there might not have been enough women with the right training."

"Yes," Sally answered. "In the early days of commercial airlines, a lot of pilots were hired because they had military flying experience, especially in combat. Women didn't have combat experience, so very few of them were chosen. If they were chosen, they had to have experience in flight school."



Nan said, "But now that a lot more women are in the military, that should change, right? I mean, women can go into combat now."

"Right," said Sally. "In fact, some experts think that women actually have an advantage over men because they make better pilots. It may take a while, but it'll change."

"You know, Sally," Nan asked, "I think I want to read this book. Where can I get hold of it?"

"You ought to be able to find it at that big bookstore downtown. Or you might even find it in the supermarket. But I'll lend you my copy if you can't."

"Great," Nan said.

(Based on the information in David Feldman, *Why don't cats like to swim? Why do clock run clockwise? When do fish sleep?*)

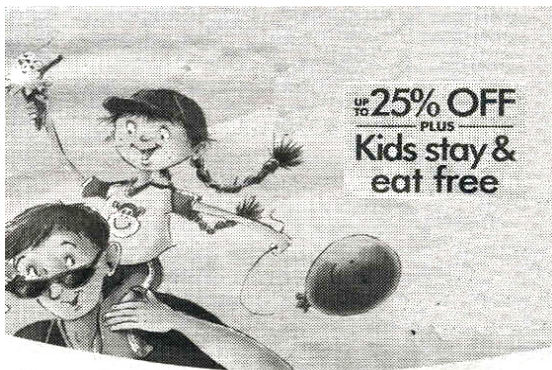
98

**REPHRASE** some sentences from the text above; express the same degree of certainty.

1. Cats must be afraid of water.
  - A. Maybe cats are afraid of water.
  - B. It's possible cats are afraid of water.
  - C. Probably, cats are afraid of water.
2. That can't be the reason. It's too obvious.
  - A. I don't believe it's the reason.
  - B. Perhaps it's not the reason.
  - C. I think this is not the reason.
3. It might be because they are lazy.
  - A. I am sure it's because they are lazy.
  - B. Obviously it is because they are lazy.
  - C. Maybe it's because they are lazy.
4. They might have started using different colours to tell boys and girls apart.
  - A. I think they started using different colours...
  - B. I am almost sure they started using different colours... .
  - C. It's surprising they should have started using different colours... .
5. They may have thought that certain colours were luckier than others.
  - A. Most probably they thought that certain colours... .
  - B. There's no denying the fact they thought that certain colours... .
  - C. I think they, perhaps, thought that certain colours... .
6. They must have thought boys had more status.
  - A. Evidently they thought boys had more status.
  - B. It's incredible they should have thought boys had more status.
  - C. It seems to me they thought boys had more status.
7. Could it have something to do with military experience?
  - A. Isn't it surprising that it has something to do with military experience?
  - B. Is it possible that it has something to do with military experience?
  - C. Probably it has something to do with military experience.

99

**Look at the advertisements and EXPRESS SUPPOSITION** about what is being advertised.



**TEST YOURSELF: Choose the best variants of modal verbs (*can, may, must*) with the appropriate infinitive.**

1. After that Mr Barnes \_\_\_\_\_ (должно быть, вернулся) and had his second breakfast. That was his usual routine.
 

a) must return	b) could return
c) might have returned	d) must have returned
2. \_\_\_\_\_ (Неужели Джо не вернул) the papers to the tax office by the 31<sup>st</sup> of March?
 

a) Can Joe have failed to return	b) Couldn't Joe have returned
c) Could Joe not have returned	d) Joe can't have returned
3. \_\_\_\_\_ (Не может быть, что Патрик женился) Olga! As far as I know she didn't want to move to another country.
 

a) Patrick couldn't have married	b) Patrick was not able to marry
c) Patrick might not have married	d) Patrick must not marry
4. By the time the jeep reached the runway it \_\_\_\_\_ (вероятно, шел на скорости) ninety miles an hour.
 

a) could have done	b) must have been doing
c) might do	d) must have done
5. – Molly works full-time at an advertising agency to support herself and her son.  
– She \_\_\_\_\_ (очевидно, устает) when she gets home at the end of the day.
 

a) could have been tired	b) could be tired
c) must have been tired	d) must be tired
6. Poor Liz! It was just an accident. \_\_\_\_\_ (Не может быть, что она приняла) the drug with the idea of suicide in her mind.
 

a) might not have taken	b) couldn't take
c) couldn't have taken	d) must have taken
7. The latest results show that \_\_\_\_\_ (возможно, есть) a closer relationship between the mind and the body than people realize.
 

a) there could have be	b) there could be
c) there might be	d) there maybe
8. \_\_\_\_\_ (Мог бы ты сделать потише) the stereo down please?
 

a) Could you have turned	b) Could you turn
c) Might you turn	d) May you turn
9. You \_\_\_\_\_ (вероятно, шутишь)! Polly can't have changed her mind.
 

a) might be kidding	b) must be kidding
c) may kid	d) must have been kidding
10. Your adviser \_\_\_\_\_ (мог бы помочь) you with that application. I wish he had.
 

a) could help	b) may have helped
c) might help	d) might have helped



# BE TO


## 101 COMMENT on the communicative meanings of *be to*.

1. You **are to** take a teaspoonful of this medicine three times a day.
2. When **is** the car **to be** ready?
3. The lecture **is to** begin 4p.m.
4. She played the violin perfectly but I didn't know yet that she **was to** become a great musician.
5. Oliver and Jane's wedding took place two weeks later, in the Calvery Chapel church where Leslie and Oliver **were to** have been married.
6. What **is to** become of us? Nobody knows where we are.
7. What kind of work **are we to** do now?
8. – Why are you in such a hurry? – **I'm to** drive our guest to the airport.
9. The guard **is to** be inside protecting the building.
10. The executive director **is to** be found in the office in the day time.
11. **I was to** have bought a battery but the shop was closed.
12. **Are** we to lock the doors?

## 102 State the FUNCTIONAL USE of the verb *to be*.

1. **I'm** to take 3 courses this term.
2. Your order **was** to make contact and to maintain it.
3. What text **are** we to read now?
4. When things went well, he **was** a most pleasant chap.
5. He **isn't** old enough to dress himself.
6. Where **is** the secretary to be found?
7. Lana **was** to have rung me up but she didn't.
8. They **were** caught in a downpour and came back drenched.
9. Your nephew **is** driving home now.
10. The room **was** a jumble of old books, scratch paper, dirty coffee cups.

## 103 Ask QUESTIONS to which the following statements are the answers. Use *to be to*.

1. The Setons planning to make a tour of Spain this summer.   
What kind of tour are they to make?
2. We agreed to meet at the University.  
– What place \_\_\_\_\_?
3. Nancy was going to be back soon.  
– When \_\_\_\_\_?
4. They have settled to install a new version of Windows.  
– What kind \_\_\_\_\_?
5. Seb is appointed to speak with the authorities about it.  
– Who \_\_\_\_\_ with?
6. Ross was promised to be given some extra money for his work.  
– How much \_\_\_\_\_



7. Our guests are supposed to arrive in the morning.  
-What time \_\_\_\_\_?
8. The sales manager is obliged to present a report at the conference.  
- What \_\_\_\_\_?
9. I order to give the information when they call.  
- What \_\_\_\_\_?
10. They were supposed to stay at home last weekend.  
- Why \_\_\_\_\_?
11. I want you to buy some pineapples.  
- How many \_\_\_\_\_?
12. They promised to meet us at the station but nobody did.  
- Who \_\_\_\_\_?

**104** Show that the planned action was NOT CARRIED OUT. Supply the reasons.

e.g. The plane was to take off at midnight.  $\implies$  *The plane was to have taken off at midnight but the flight was delayed because of the storm.*

1. He was to be operated on on Friday, the thirteenth of October.
2. He was to graduate in July.
3. We were to take part in the competition.
4. They were to reserve a room in the hotel.
5. Our client was to leave for Glasgow just after signing the contract.
6. We were to stay at the Hilton for a fortnight.
7. The luggage was to be brought down.
8. We were to take the road about dawn.
9. We were to camp at the foot of the mountain for the night.
10. The number one pop star was to give a concert in our city.
11. The concert was to last for two hours.
12. Mr. Jones was to be discharged from hospital on Tuesday.

**105** Fill in the appropriate INFINITIVE.

1. I was to \_\_\_\_\_ (start) my dance lessons straight away but I injured my leg.
2. Mr. Blake said how distressed he would be if the marriage between Mr. Crale was to \_\_\_\_\_ (break up) so disastrously.
3. The talks were to \_\_\_\_\_ (start) in the morning but I was late for the beginning because I was stuck in a traffic jam.
4. The delegation was to \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) yesterday but the flight was delayed because of the stormy weather.
5. He is to \_\_\_\_\_ (call) on her. We expect him with the news.
6. Such amazing models are not \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) with every day.
7. Nelson was to \_\_\_\_\_ (take) his exam that day but he fell ill.
8. We were to \_\_\_\_\_ (take) a diving test at the beginning of the week, but the equipment went out of order.
9. I was to \_\_\_\_\_ (wash) the dishes but I was prevented from doing it by an urgent call.
10. I was to \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) a farm but it wasn't to be because of the default.

11. Jane remembered the day when Fred was to \_\_\_\_\_ (pay) his first visit to her parents.
12. – You are to \_\_\_\_\_ (start) your job in Chicago in August.  
– It's a fantastic opportunity. But I'm getting married in August.
13. The money Sabin had placed in trust funds for charitable uses was to \_\_\_\_\_ (go) only to the crippled and the aged.
14. Drake was to \_\_\_\_\_ (inquire) the pet stores about the care and feeding the parrots but the stores were closed.
15. The Sergeant was sure that the remains of fish were \_\_\_\_\_ (find) in the garbage pail at the back of the house.

**106** **REPHRASE the sentences using *be to*.**

1. You are supposed to wear special glasses to protect your eyesight.
2. Who did you ask to fix your washing machine?
3. You're overweight again though you promised to give up fried food and sweets.
4. My order is that you shouldn't see him again.
5. Very often people could see Oscar's dog at the station.
6. Frank, you gave a word to speak with our daughter, but you haven't done it yet.
7. You aren't supposed to ask questions at the quest.
8. We've arranged everything. Tell Beth that we expect her to be here at six.
9. We were supposed to speak with the manager, but we couldn't find him.
10. The next helicopter leaves from here in ten minutes.
11. We are planning to build a new bridge here next year.
12. Mr. Haggard is the person to address in case you have problems.

**107** **TRANSLATE into English.**

1. Как положено принимать это лекарство?
2. – Где можно найти эту книгу? – Ее можно купить в любом магазине.
3. Мне было предписано явиться в 4 часа пополудни.
4. Официантки нигде не было видно.
5. Я обещал позвонить ей, но забыл об этом. Я должен был взять ее покататься на лодке.
6. Вы должны вернуться к концу семестра.
7. Всем нашим рабочим предписано носить на службе униформу.
8. Когда ты должна позвонить ему?
9. Если вы хотите, чтобы все было в порядке, вы должны сложить деньги в красную сумку и оставить ее на балконе.
10. Мы должны были полететь самолетом, но был штормовой ветер, и нам пришлось поехать поездом.
11. Предполагается, что студенты в течение всего курса не должны разговаривать на русском языке.

12. Почему ты меня не разбудила? Я должен был встать в половине шестого. Что же теперь со мной будет?

13. Важно было найти Дэбби, потому что предполагалось, что она должна сопровождать его вечером на рождественский бал.

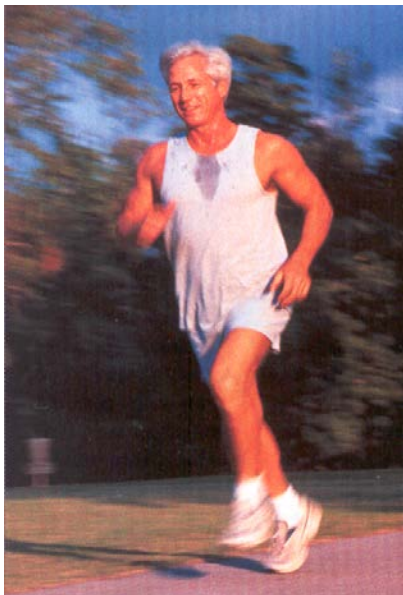
14. Этой милой девочке суждено было стать моей невесткой.

15. Вы должны покинуть страну не позднее 25 августа.

**108** Read the suggestions.

**a) Choose reasonable answer(s) to the question and explain your choice; use modal verbs.**

**WHAT ARE WE TO MAKE OF ALL THE NEW FOOD FADS WE READ ABOUT IN THE PAPERS?**



1. Ignore them all and eat as wide a variety of foodstuffs as possible.
2. If you want to lose or gain weight, simply eat a little less or a little more and take exercise. But when eating more or less, ensure that the variety of foodstuffs consumed is maintained.
3. Avoid over-indulgence in any of one particular kind of food or drink. Too much of any one thing is unnatural and can be dangerous. A little coffee, a little sugar, a little alcohol are beneficial.
4. Banish all forms of anxiety from the food table. High-stressed anxiety over obtaining a perfect diet does more harm than an imperfect diet, which is eaten happily.
5. Be calm and enjoy your food – this is a good way of ensuring a long life.

**b) Write a list of planned steps that can help keep fit.**

**Prompts:** whether you are young or old, male or female:

stop smoking;

reduce the cholesterol levels;

acquire a thinner waist;

make certain that the blood pressure is normal;

take sensible exercise;

have oily fish (herrings, mackerel, tuna, sardines, salmon, trout, anchovies);

reduce the intake of salt.

---

---

---

---

---

109

⊗ Work with the partner. You are planning a cruise to Mexico. Name the five things you are to do before you start.



1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_

# HAVE TO

**110** TRANSLATE the sentences into Russian paying attention to the tense forms of 'to have to'.

1. I live near the office so I **don't have to** drive to work.
2. I'd like to ask you about the rent. How much **will I have to** pay and when?
3. So your husband **had to** quit the job, didn't he?
4. She **has had to** wear glasses since childhood.
5. Learning to touch-type (печатать вслепую) will also stop you **having to** look down constantly.
6. Even if I **had had to** wait until 3 a.m. to sneak back to Chances office, I would have done it.
7. If the fever continues, I'll **have to** send for the doctor.
8. I took that check because I'd **got to** have some money quickly and I didn't know where to turn.
9. It was believed that evil spirits appeared at the wedding and they **had to** be fed with rice to keep them from doing harm to the newlyweds.
10. I realized I **had to** see Douglas to tell him that he'd been tricked.

**111** State the FUNCTIONAL USE of the verb *have*.

1. I'm afraid you'll **have** to recharge the batteries frequently.
2. I'll **have** to sell everything to buy a car.
3. Does anybody **have** an idea why this terrible thing **has** happened to this patient?
4. My mother would **have** despised this too.
5. We **had** nothing to drink on the bus.
6. We don't **have** to wear a uniform for school.
7. I hope you **have** nothing to complain about.
8. She **hasn't** been to Australia and feels unhappy about it.
9. Miss Wheeler, you'll **have** to understand that the nurses here are primarily interested in good patient care.
10. Rick wouldn't **have** done anything to put me at risk.
11. I'll **have** you go to hospital.
12. He **has** a lot to learn, that man, even if he **has** got a degree in theology.

**112** Say what people *have had to/haven't had to* do for a long time.

1. There's something wrong with my eyes. I have had to be on sick leave since the beginning of August.
2. Since her husband's death she \_\_\_\_\_ black.
3. I joined them as junior clerk two years ago and since that time \_\_\_\_\_ hard to be promoted.
4. Since we bought the popcorn maker we \_\_\_\_\_ in contact with the mechanic.
5. Since the beginning of my holiday I \_\_\_\_\_ early.
6. He lost his job last month and they \_\_\_\_\_ his wife's salary.

7. The baby has been coughing day and night and we \_\_\_\_\_ all these days.
8. My car is in the repair shop and I \_\_\_\_\_ to use a bus for a week already.
9. As I live on an island I \_\_\_\_\_ all my life.
10. I easily gain weight and I \_\_\_\_\_ for many years.
11. I'm Russian, but I \_\_\_\_\_ since our family moved to Finland.
12. My mother had a stroke 5 years ago and I \_\_\_\_\_ ever since.

**113** COMPLETE the sentences using *have to* in the appropriate tense forms.

1. I understand you \_\_\_\_\_ interrupt your holiday on my account now. I'm terribly sorry.
2. – I can barely add a column of figures.  
– Neither can my husband. So I \_\_\_\_\_ fill out our income tax every year.
3. – How did you manage to sell more than your competitors?  
– We \_\_\_\_\_ think of the prices and the terms of delivery.
4. – Why \_\_\_\_\_ (we) set out so early? It's stupid.  
– It's not my fault. We are to. That's an order.
5. Cora couldn't cope with his moods any more, they \_\_\_\_\_ split up.
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ make an injection yet. And I hope I \_\_\_\_\_ (never).
7. We should remember about terrorists so we \_\_\_\_\_ tighten up security for President's visit.
8. How long \_\_\_\_\_ (you and Kelvin) be partners in business?  
Are you satisfied with such partnership?
9. – Bertha fainted and she got to herself in hospital.  
– She had to stay there long, \_\_\_\_\_?
10. We \_\_\_\_\_ keep the prices down for two months before we placed the matter in the hands of our solicitors.
11. My husband \_\_\_\_\_ wear uniform since he became a policeman.
12. Until we get some new orders, we \_\_\_\_\_ go on working.
13. The letters on top are the ones you simply \_\_\_\_\_ answer.
14. Tell him he \_\_\_\_\_ wait about ten minutes.
15. Oh, I remember once I \_\_\_\_\_ learn some dates. It was horrible.

**114** REPHRASE the sentences using *have to* in the appropriate tense forms.

1. My car has broken down. It makes me walk to work.  $\implies$  *I have to walk to work.*
2. I never remember her telephone number. I have nothing to do but always look it up.
3. Phil went to the police station though he didn't want it.
4. Were you requested to account for the absence from the meeting?
5. Will it be necessary for me to have my tooth pulled out?
6. The circumstances make me phone you so late.
7. Brendan can't join us. His boss made him work overtime.
8. The policeman made my brother pay a parking fine.
9. He's had poor eyesight since childhood; he can do nothing but wear glasses.
10. I've worked here for 25 years. I'm sick and tired of it, but I see no way out.



**117** TRANSLATE the Russian equivalents into English focusing on the use of *have to*.

1. Сюзанна осознавала, что ей придется перечитать последние несколько статей, которые она прочла прошлой ночью.
2. Гарри теперь выглядел еще меньше и еще худее, чем обычно, потому что все время ему приходилось носить старую одежду Дадли, а Дадли был в четыре раза больше его.
3. Где мне надо переходить на другую линию метро?
4. Конечно, ей не пришлось волноваться. Ведь она столько раз репетировала брачную церемонию.
5. Именно поэтому тебе необходимо понять, как мне ужасно жаль Адама.
6. Пациент должен был снять рубашку, чтобы доктор мог осмотреть его.
7. С тех пор как ему дали звание сержанта, ему приходится работать гораздо больше, но ему нравится работа.
8. Мне надо делать пересадку в Дувре, да?
9. Он всегда такой неуравновешенный. А я вынуждена мириться с этим всю жизнь.
10. Каждому гражданину приходится платить налоги.
11. Я знаю, что ты считаешь, с моей стороны это несправедливо. Но я действительно должен идти.
12. – Мы ничего не знаем о новых технологиях. – Тогда нам придется это узнать, не так ли?
13. Вынужден признать, ты готовишь хорошо.
14. Мэйсон добавил, что с тех пор, как родители Эдиты умерли, она вынуждена много работать.
15. Им пришлось отретушировать (to touch up) фотографию премьер министра, чтобы он выглядел моложе, да? – Скорей всего, так. На самом деле он гораздо старше, чем на фотографии.

**118**  Given below are the house rules of an English family for overseas students. Read them and write as many sentences as you can about what:



a) a perfect family/a student can/can't do;

b) a perfect family/a student must/mustn't do;

c) a perfect family/a student has/doesn't have to do;

d) a perfect family/a student may/may not do.



# HOUSE RULES

## DINNER

Dinner will be served at 6p.m.–6.30. If you do not wish to eat on a particular night, please inform me or leave a note on the kitchen table in the morning.

## BREAKFAST

Toast, cereal will be left for you, together with tea or coffee. Please help yourself.

## WASHING

One machine load of washing will be done on Mondays. If there is an excess of washing, £2 will be charged per extra load.

## TELEPHONE

The telephone **may** be used with permission from the family, and only with an International Phone Card available from the School or the Post Office. Please try and keep your calls to a maximum of 15 minutes.

## BATHROOM

Please ensure that all water stays in the bath. Keep the doors out over the bath to prevent water going on the floor. Please also make sure that the toilets are kept cleaned for the benefit of the next person.

## FRIENDS

One friend at a time **may** visit in your room or in the kitchen.

## TELEVISION

You **may** watch the television in the kitchen only or in your room.

## HOUSE ALARM

The alarm must be ON whenever the house is empty. The code is 4852. When going out, press 4852 - "Wait" it then reads "Set System Maz". Then press "Yes". All inside doors and windows **must** be closed and the cats **must** be closed in the kitchen. When you arrive home and the house is empty and the alarm on, press 4852.

## SMOKING

No smoking anywhere in the house. If you wish to smoke in the garden, please dispose of your cigarette ends carefully.

## GOING OUT

When going out of the house or returning, please let us know, so that we always know who is at home and who is out.

## TOWELS

Towels will be provided weekly if you require.

## SHEETS

Sheets will be provided. Beds will be changed every 7 to 10 days.

## GOING TO SCHOOL

If you are ill or **cannot** go to school for any other reason, please let us know. Students are normally at school weekdays. Not at home...

## BE TO – HAVE TO compared

**119** CHOOSE between *have to* and *be to* positive or negative in the appropriate tense forms.

1. Good. I'll take you with me but you \_\_\_\_\_ promise me you'll behave yourself.
2. In Japan, watermelons are rather expensive; you \_\_\_\_\_ pay \$15 to \$20 for a nice one.
3. The teacher gave an instruction, "You \_\_\_\_\_ listen to it for the second time and focus on the notes."
4. He was injured in the last game and \_\_\_\_\_ miss the final.
5. Why are you at home? You \_\_\_\_\_ be on the train now.
6. Christmas dinner is about timing. But I promise you, Ash, you \_\_\_\_\_ cook.
7. There was a new receptionist at the desk in Chatman's. Ash \_\_\_\_\_ wait while the girl checked that Ash was who she said she was.
8. – None of these people are ordinary people. None of them \_\_\_\_\_ worry about their mortgages ([ 'mɔ:ɡɪdʒ ] заклад; ипотека) or \_\_\_\_\_ save up for their holidays or think up about how they'll afford to trade in (менять с доплатой) the car.  
– You \_\_\_\_\_ worry about that either.  
– Only because I don't have a car! But I do have a mortgage.
9. – I heard the front door closing. – Yes. Cordelia \_\_\_\_\_ leave early. She \_\_\_\_\_ be at the meeting at 6.
10. When I lived with Julia I \_\_\_\_\_ be grown up all the time. When I lived with Molly I was encouraged to be a child.
11. Hurry up, we \_\_\_\_\_ be there ages in advance of the celebrities.
12. – \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ sell the company?  
– Only the controlling interest. I'm still the managing director. They \_\_\_\_\_ pay me a huge, huge salary to keep the run of the company.
13. In many Christian countries, "Touch wood" is a superstitious expression that \_\_\_\_\_ to prevent bad luck.

**120** REPHRASE the sentences using *be to* and *have to*.

1. Chris can't come with us. He's taking his car to the garage at eight.
2. The circumstances were such as to ask a policeman the way to the nearest police station.
3. I was badly asked to submit the result of the experiment to the Committee.
4. They are planning to open a new cosmetic section next month.
5. English children are made to stay at school till the age of 16.
6. I'm afraid it will be necessary for you to pay for the repairs.
7. We had nothing to do but get a taxi.
8. Mrs Kelly is supposed to visit our exhibition on Wednesday.
9. Poor Miss Harbottle had nothing to do but go and live most uncomfortably in rooms in Eastbourne.
10. We were ordered to stay in during the storm.

**121** FILL IN the blanks with *must, have to, be to* in the appropriate Tense forms (positive or negative).

1. She \_\_\_\_\_ go to the hairdresser's that day but her attention was caught by one of the styles displayed in the window and she entered the salon.
2. If you want somebody to fit your life perfectly there \_\_\_\_\_ be a bit of give and take (взаимные уступки).
3. You \_\_\_\_\_ visit the art gallery. The sculptures are very beautiful.
4. Ellen \_\_\_\_\_ rewrite several pages before she handed in the work. It was much better now.
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ show you the photos I took when we were on holiday in Spain.
6. If you \_\_\_\_\_ get there by 6, we'd better take a taxi.
7. What \_\_\_\_\_ happen to all of us, if they close the power station?
8. The kitchen was so bad that I \_\_\_\_\_ do something about it.
9. She \_\_\_\_\_ have known about it then but she hadn't said anything.
10. Their wedding \_\_\_\_\_ have taken place in September, but they split up.
11. When the pizza arrived, she \_\_\_\_\_ admit that it was excellent.
12. This is my job and I \_\_\_\_\_ be good at it.

**122** TRANSLATE into English.

a)

1. Боюсь, нам придется поменять наши планы.
2. – Где Стивенсоны будут жить?  
a) – Они должны остановиться у нас, когда приедут. (*я так считаю*) /  
b) – Они должны остановиться у нас, когда приедут. (*мы так спланировали*)
3. Все, что тебе придется сделать, это завести двигатель.
4. Его можно увидеть каждый вечер выгуливающего свою собаку.
5. После завтрака, они должны были пойти в кино.
6. После завтрака они должны были пойти в кино, но начался сильный дождь.
7. Картину эту сейчас можно найти в галерее Тейт.
8. Кто должен его допрашивать?
9. Мы должны быть дома самое позднее в 11 часов. (*Не хочу, чтобы родители беспокоились*)
10. Мы должны быть дома самое позднее в 11 часов. (*Мы так договорились с родителями.*)
11. Я вынужден признать, что его план лучше.
12. Джеймсу пришлось уехать из страны, да?
13. Ему не пришлось ждать Стейси. Она появилась ровно в 5.
14. Мне приходится принимать лекарства от давления уже 10 лет.
15. Когда мы должны подать рекламное объявление в газету? (to put an advertisement in a newspaper)

b)

1. Луису пришлось сказать Лиллиан, что его пригласили давние друзья матери, и они условились встретиться в воскресенье.
2. – Думаю, есть только одно решение, Роберт. Привози своего сына сюда.  
– Ты могла бы это вынести?  
– Придется.

3. Позже моего сына часто можно было встретить в компании хорошо одетых и самоуверенных молодых людей.

4. Отец считал, что ему позволено делать все, так как он художник. Мать, в конце концов, вынуждена была уйти от него.

5. – Долго ли вы пробыли в горах? – Мы должны были пробыть около двух недель, но наш проводник сильно простудился, и через пять дней мы вынуждены были вернуться назад.

6. Извините, я должна покинуть вас. У меня срочный звонок.

7. У вас нет выбора. Нищие не выбирают. Придется соглашаться.

8. Вы знаете, когда он должен приехать?

9. Несмотря на нашу ссору при первой встрече, нам суждено было стать добрыми друзьями на долгие годы.

10. – Кто будет вручать награды?

– Президент должен делать это.

– Ну и когда вы встречаетесь?

– Мы условились встретиться после работы.

11. – Обходы будут каждое утро в шесть тридцать. Вам положено до этого осмотреть пациентов и собрать необходимую информацию.

– Боже, мне придется вставать раньше, чем я лягу спать.

12. Я должна подать заявление не позднее 30 марта. Таковы требования программы.

**123** TEST YOURSELF: make the best choice in the following.

1. We **didn't have to hurry / were not to hurry / were not to have hurried**. There was plenty of time.

2. She **was to live / was to have lived / had to live** in Texas and sell real estate but her husband was sent to India.

3. **Am I to take / Do I have to take / Have I to take** the drug twice a day, doctor? Am I right with the prescription?

4. I didn't realize that something bad **was to happen / had to happen / was to have happened**.

5. Mrs. Morel is a rich woman; she **is not to work / was not to work / doesn't have to work**.

6. Tell me about the party. Who is invited? What kind of party **is it to be / is it to have been / has it to be**?

7. When Harry got back after the call, he said he **had to leave / was to leave / was to have left** straight away.

8. Sharon Sexton who works as bouncer says that she only very occasionally **has to use / is to use** force.

9. We **are to meet / have to / will have to** meet at the café at 6.30.

10. You **were to call / were to have called / had to call** your parents on Saturday. What prevented you from doing it?

11. You **were to call / were to have called / had to call** your parents. Did you speak with them?

12. Dear colleges, we are on a tight budget. I'm afraid we **will have to reduce / are to reduce** the firm's expenditures.

# NEED

## 124 COMMENT on the meanings:

- a) mark the sentences in which 'need' functions as a regular verb;  
b) define the pragmatic meanings of the modal verb 'need'.

1. Cats **don't need to be taken** for walks, they **don't need to be told** that you love them, they don't make unreasonable demands.
2. 'You **needn't work** late this evening,' said Mr. Green.
3. So you **didn't need to talk** about this any more, did you?
4. We **needn't have advertised** the tires. They are selling well.
5. I badly **needed** a good substantial dinner instead.
6. Ash, you are being even more childish than Michelle. The pair of you **need to grow up**.
7. My wife says we **need** a maiden for the coming summer.
8. You **needn't phone** me tonight. Tomorrow will be OK.
9. **Do we need to know** the history of the country we are going to visit?
10. **Need you know** the size of the Government's budget deficit?
11. **Need I write** it down? – Yes, you must / No, you **needn't**.
12. Must I stay here? – Yes, you must / No, you **needn't**.

## 125 Use the appropriate form of the INFINITIVE after need.

1. I wonder if I need \_\_\_\_\_ (shave) today. I don't think I have to do it on Sunday.
2. You needn't \_\_\_\_\_ (take up) your skirt. It wasn't too long.
3. Speak to Joseph if you need \_\_\_\_\_ (to book) a room.
4. Do I need \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a member to use the golf club?
5. I'm afraid we need \_\_\_\_\_ (call) in an expert.
6. Did he need \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) a new pack of cards to do that trick?
7. We don't need \_\_\_\_\_ (discuss) the operation. I know what you have to say.
8. We needn't \_\_\_\_\_ (fill in) the form. Nobody asked for it. It was no use doing it.
9. If we buy an orchard we'll have fruit all the summer through and we won't need \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) any.
10. I need hardly \_\_\_\_\_ (say) that I've never mentioned his painting.
11. We \_\_\_\_\_ (ask) them for the compensation. I wish I hadn't. I knew they wouldn't agree to it.
12. You needn't \_\_\_\_\_ (lose) weight. You looked pretty good.
13. Mike, \_\_\_\_\_ you (clean) the car now? In a minute it will be as dirty as it used to be.
14. You needn't \_\_\_\_\_ (push) the bell button for so long. There's nobody inside. We've just wasted time.
15. Father is much better now. He no longer needs \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to hospital.

## 126 REPHRASE the following with the verb need in many possible ways.

- a)
1. It was unnecessary for me to clean the windows, but I did.

2. There is no need in worrying.
3. You may not eat all the food. It isn't necessary.
4. Is it necessary that you should have an appointment with Dr. Johnson before next week?
5. If there is a special need to send the delivery quicker, make a special note on it.
6. I ran fast but it was unnecessary.
7. It's no longer necessary to have a visa to visit the Cyprus.
8. It's waste of effort helping him.

**b)**

9. It was unnecessary for you to tell Margaret anything twice.
10. There's no need for you to go into detail now that we've come to the general conclusion.
11. There was no need to buy more potatoes and I didn't.
12. I wish I hadn't filled in so many application forms. I've received good news from the IBM branch in Australia and I'm leaving for it in a week.
13. There was no need to buy more potatoes, but I did.
14. It isn't necessary that you should pay your fees at the entrance.
15. It wasn't necessary to cut so many sandwiches. We're expecting only four persons.
16. In Siberia people don't experience the need in buying a lot of summer clothes.

**127** TRANSLATE into English.

1. Мистер Пэриш, можно вас на минутку? Парням из федерального агентства нужно кое-что обсудить.
2. «Зря думаешь, что я собираюсь чесать тебе шею», – проинформировала она кота, не двигаясь с места и поглаживая ему голову.
3. Ты сам сказал, что тебе нужно сделать много.
4. Тебе нужно встречаться и с другими людьми компании. А ты как будто приклеился к письменному столу.
5. Алистер молод, не женат и сорит деньгами, и ему вовсе не к чему быть серьезным.
6. – Как твой шикарный друг?  
– С ним все в порядке, но мне нужно поговорить с тобой и объяснить...  
– О, нет необходимости ничего мне объяснять! Но я завидую тебе.
7. Ваш сын вел себя хорошо. Не нужно было просить его ни о чем дважды.
8. Нам необходимо решить, кто будет в комитете. Нужно, чтобы он состоял из двоих мужчин и двух женщин.
9. Я не думаю, что нам нужно видеться слишком часто.
10. Можно было и не вставлять новый замок. Я починил старый.
11. Стоит ли подстригать кусты сейчас? Зачем мы это делаем в такую погоду?
12. Можно было и не ждать столько времени декана. Его заместитель мог бы решить этот вопрос.

**128** DEVELOP the statements into situations justifying the use of *need*.

1. They needn't have taken it.
2. They didn't need to take it.
3. He needn't have phoned her.
4. You needn't come tomorrow.

**129** Study the dialogues, explain the use of the modal verbs and MAKE UP your own dialogues in the same way.

1. – What shall I do about this letter asking for money? **Must** I answer it?  
– No, you **needn't**. If I were you, I'd tear it up.
2. – The press are always looking for scandal, digging up something new. **Need** we give them information about George's past?  
– I'm afraid we **must**. It **may** help the police find the real burglar.

**130** MAKE a list of things people don't need to do today because they think it can wait.

1. My husband has gone on business, so I needn't cook dinner today.
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_

**TEST YOURSELF: Fill in the blanks with a) needn't have done b) didn't need to/didn't have to**

- 131**
1. I \_\_\_\_\_ (worry). When I was discharged from hospital I found out that my neighbours had taken care of the flowers.
  2. The plane took off on time and we \_\_\_\_\_ (worry) about how to get on the connecting flight in Boston.
  3. I went to college today, but I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) there as all the lectures were cancelled.
  4. It was Sunday and I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to college.
  5. Susan felt better so we \_\_\_\_\_ (call) the doctor.
  6. You \_\_\_\_\_ (call) the ambulance. I wish you hadn't. I'm quite all right.
  7. We \_\_\_\_\_ (hurry) to the airport, we had plenty of time before the plane took off.
  8. I travelled light, and I \_\_\_\_\_ (hire) a porter to see to my luggage.
  9. It was a false alarm. There happened to be no hijackers on board the plane. We \_\_\_\_\_ (worry).
  10. My secretary was there to take notes, so I \_\_\_\_\_ (do) it.
  11. Under the pilot's guidance, I managed to land the plane. It was an unbelievably exciting experience. I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) so scared and anxious.
  12. I booked the tickets long in advance, and I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the booking office on the day of the departure.

# SHOULD / OUGHT TO

**132** TRANSLATE the sentences into Russian and MARK those with subjective meaning.

1. His head was throbbing. He decided he **ought to** go to hospital after all.
2. Mr. McDeer can't stand meetings so his speech **shouldn't be** long.
3. I **ought to have suspected** something, I suppose.
4. You **ought to stand up** for your boss, I'm sure he will respect you for it.
5. Medicine **should be kept** out of reach of children.
6. All that talk about *Art!* You **should have seen** that picture Crale was painting.
7. I pick up accents far too easily – you **should hear** me when I visit my pals in Kerry.
8. – They were killed outright. Both of them.  
– I'm sorry. Really sorry. I **shouldn't have asked** you about it.
9. We're in for a spell of sunny days, so you **ought to get** sunburnt.
10. Why, Mr. Crust, you *do* look bad. Hadn't you better have a drop of wine? Really, now, you **oughtn't to** go travelling today.
11. His story **ought to be** exciting; he's been to lots of exotic countries.
12. I felt convinced that something **ought to be done** and that we **shouldn't allow** the grass to grow under our feet.

**133** Define the FUNCTIONAL use of *should*.

1. I **should** have left you, Gordon, long before this. That was my mistake.
2. It's important that people **should** have a break in the middle of the day.
3. The room was too cold for a nap and I promised myself again that I **should** complain to the landlady about it.
4. Both of them had repeatedly said that I **should** listen more and speak less.
5. She **should** run, perhaps, even leave town. Or **should** she call the police anyway, as Stark had suggested?
6. 'I really **should** be getting back,' she protested in a way she hoped would not sound too definitive.
7. **Should** you be interested in our offer, please let us know.
8. If I were a man, I **should** be a sailor.
9. He suggested that we **should** have our old henhouse repaired.
10. I don't see any reason why you **shouldn't** tell the truth.

**134** EXPRESS advice or criticism.

a)

1. He wasn't careful and made a mistake.  $\implies$  *He should have been more careful.*
2. We've spent all the money. So we can't afford a good holiday. \_\_\_\_\_
3. They were punished as they were smoking in the classroom. \_\_\_\_\_
4. She doesn't keep her money in the bank. She can't save enough for the holiday. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Susan didn't use her alarm clock and was late for work. \_\_\_\_\_
6. She isn't packing. She may be late for the train.



7. I was hungry and ate all the ice-cream. Now I have a sore throat. \_\_\_\_\_
8. I'm bored with my new job. \_\_\_\_\_
9. You are exhausted because you've been working too much. \_\_\_\_\_
10. I refused Fred's proposal. Now I regret it. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Den wasn't working when the boss entered the laboratory. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Helen punishes her children. I don't approve of it. \_\_\_\_\_

**135** Express advice choosing you'd *better* or *should*. You can use both if possible.

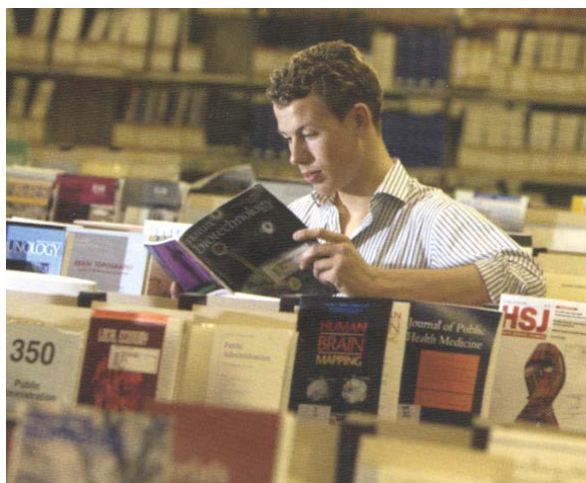
1. Stella is not well. You **should / had better** \_\_\_\_\_ go and see her.
2. You'd **better not / You shouldn't** stay here any longer. You've got a lot of work to do at home.
3. I asked her where I **should / had better** wait for her.
4. If you see an accident, you **should / had better** call the police.
5. **You'd better / you should** carry out my order, or there'll be trouble.
6. Passengers **should / had better** follow the rules on board a ship.
7. The firm **should / had better** reduce the expenditures.
8. **I had better not / I shouldn't** go to bed so late next time.
9. Now I see I **shouldn't / I had better not** go to bed late.
10. Everyone **should/had better** have a place to live in.

**136** TRANSLATE into English. Express advice, criticism, or regret.

1. Если вы хотите успеть на самолет, вам лучше взять такси.
2. Тебе лучше заплатить за ущерб, иначе у тебя будут неприятности.
3. Вам следует спать с открытыми окнами.
4. Не следует тебе выходить в дождливую погоду.
5. Не надо было ей тратить все деньги на украшения.
6. Тебе не надо с ним встречаться. У него жена и ребёнок.
7. Мне надо было взять зонтик. Я вся промокла.
8. Детям следовало закрыть дверь на замок.
9. Тебе не следовало обижать полицейского.
10. Вам нужно срочно починить звонок.
11. Тебе лучше жениться на ней. Иначе будет скандал.
12. Тебе следует жениться на ней. Она хорошая женщина. Лучшей жены тебе не найти.
13. Ей следует лучше заботиться о своих питомцах.

**137** Look at the picture and read the notes.

a) Rank in order of importance the RECOMMENDATIONS a UK University can make to help an international student choose the right programme of study and research. Explain your choice.



- One should have a genuine interest in the chosen subject and a desire to study it further;
- One should submit to the procedures of the University rules and regulations;
- One should have the equivalent of a UK first or upper-second class honours degree from the country;
- One should consider which method of study and assessment suits him/her best;
- One should satisfy the English language entry requirements for the specific programme.

**b) What other recommendations could you think of?**

---



---



---



---

**138** Compose sentences expressing NEAR CERTAINTY.

e.g. It's 9 a.m. *Prof Brown is a punctual person.* (he, to deliver a lecture)  $\Rightarrow$  *So he should be delivering a lecture now.*

1. - I wonder why Howard hasn't arrived yet. He is never late. - \_\_\_\_\_  
(he, to be here by now)
2. If Jeffrey is meeting with the interviewer, \_\_\_\_\_  
(he, to be in the office)
3. If your son is 16, \_\_\_\_\_  
(he, to be at the disco now)
4. If Ed is listening to music, \_\_\_\_\_  
(he, to be in love again)
5. If James is watching TV, \_\_\_\_\_  
(it, to be 8 p.m.)
6. Ring the office up. It's only 4 p.m. \_\_\_\_\_  
(the secretary, to be still there)
8. I haven't seen your son for ages. \_\_\_\_\_  
(he, to be grown up now)
9. Nell's mother used to be beautiful. \_\_\_\_\_  
(her daughter, to be pretty too)


**139** Express SUPPOSITION based on the natural course of events.

1. She's an experienced cook, *so the pie should be first-rate.* \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I've upgraded my computer, so \_\_\_\_\_.

3. The washing-machine is priced at \$500. It \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The safe is made by a well-known firm, \_\_\_\_\_.
5. What a large diamond in the ring! \_\_\_\_\_.
6. We've sent the letter by DHL, so \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Since you've been to London several times, \_\_\_\_\_.
8. If Julia Roberts stars there, \_\_\_\_\_.



**140** TRANSLATE into English focusing on the suppositional meaning of *should*.

1. Сколько она, судя по фотографии, предположительно весит?
2. Ты меня не обманешь. Я знаю наверняка, сколько это должно стоить.
3. Он носитель языка, и, конечно же, должен заметить ошибки в статье.
4. Ты едешь в тропическую страну, так что там должно быть много дождей.
5. Это кафе популярное, и Долли, судя по всему, должна быть там.
6. Она обожает кольца. Давайте подарим ей вот это, она должна быть в восторге.
7. Обычно МакГрегор (McGregor) приходит к шести, так что он скоро должен быть здесь.
8. Я купила две больших банки краски, этого должно хватить для ремонта.
9. Мой муж не любит ходить по магазинам, так что мы ненадолго.
10. Билл надежный человек, он не должен оставить жену.
11. Если вы работали в этом университете в 2005 году, вы, должно быть, знаете декана.
12. Если вас учила она, то вы обязательно должны знать грамматику.

**141**  THINK about what your teacher, mother or boyfriend/girlfriend is probably doing at a definite time during the day.

1. *If it's 7.15 a.m., Sally should be going to work* \_\_\_\_\_
2. *It's 11 a.m. so brother* \_\_\_\_\_
3. *If it's 12 p.m.,* \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_

**142** EXPRESS your emotions with '*should/shouldn't*'. Give reasons.

1. *You mustn't drive fast.*  *Why shouldn't I? I've passed my driving test.*
2. *When is he to be home?*  *How should I know? He never tells me anything.*
3. Don't laugh. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Hurry up! \_\_\_\_\_
5. Don't sleep! \_\_\_\_\_
6. Why didn't you confess your fault? \_\_\_\_\_
7. Get up! \_\_\_\_\_
8. Don't eat chocolate. \_\_\_\_\_
9. You could've become an archaeologist. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Where are my glasses? \_\_\_\_\_

**143** TRANSLATE into English focusing on *emotional should*.

1. Чего ради этот год должен быть другим?
2. С какой стати она должна оставаться в одиночестве сегодня?
3. Уж если Найоми танцует, отчего же я должна быть такой скромной?
4. – Мне необходимо посадить семена сейчас?  
– Откуда мне знать? Я не большой любитель цветов.
5. Не понимаю, чего ради было меня допрашивать.
6. Откуда мне знать, кто последним говорил с Мартином?
7. Откуда мне было знать, что вы увидите с Мартином, и он вам все расскажет?
8. – Это неправда, Гордон.  
– Чего ради мне лгать?
9. Чего ради мне было хранить секрет?
10. Отчего бы ему и не польстить ей просто, чтобы попрактиковаться в умении делать комплименты? (flattery skills)
11. Я купила несколько газет. Почему бы ему не почитать там объявления о найме на работу?

**144** Use the appropriate form of the INFINITIVE after *should/ought to*.

1. He knew he ought \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) sorry that Mrs. Fig had broken her leg, but it wasn't easy.
2. You should \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) the truth two years ago when I retired.
3. Why did they do it? They should \_\_\_\_\_ (ask) you to do the catering.
4. We have \$ 800 for the trip. That ought \_\_\_\_\_ (be) enough.
5. As far as I know, Randal should \_\_\_\_\_ (work) now. He always does.
6. May I give you a piece of advice? You shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ (take) her words for granted.
7. You're really exhausted, honey, you ought \_\_\_\_\_ (get) some sleep.
8. The less we all say the better. You should \_\_\_\_\_ (think) of that before.
9. I should \_\_\_\_\_ (protect) her. I was supposed to look after her.
10. My husband ought \_\_\_\_\_ (be) back soon. He is to go to the airport at 9.
11. Martin thought I had taken the money! But he knew me better than that. Why should he \_\_\_\_\_ (think) that?
12. – Where is their son?  
– He should \_\_\_\_\_ (sleep) now, after such a long trip.
13. We should \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) over in Lexington so that he can take the flight tomorrow.
14. I see you're cold. You shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ (swim) for so long.
15. This problem shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ (ignore), or it'll become more serious.

**145** **REPHRASE** the sentences using *should/ought to* with the appropriate Infinitive.

**a)**

1. Are you on bad terms, Ann – or, sorry, was it bad of me to have asked?
2. I think you are wrong to have divorced Debbie.
3. You'd better hide your face not to be recognized.
4. It was my mistake to buy that yacht for you.
5. Why not write a new song? You are good at it.
6. Your car is very old, so I expect the brakes to be badly worn out.
7. That was bad of you not to take him seriously.
8. What do you think I'd better wear – my white or my pink shoes?

**b)**


9. In your place I would have changed the bank.
10. It would be good if you looked for a new job.
11. It's desirable that global warming be discussed at our conference.
12. There is no point in buying such an expensive computer unless you need it for everyday work.
13. This is an expensive recreation center, so the rooms are supposed to be very comfortable.
14. It was unreasonable of you not to turn the computer off.
15. I advise that you leave your jewellery at home in the safe.

**146** **TRANSLATE** into English. Underline the Russian equivalents of '*should*'

1. Не следует ли мне рассказать полиции о визите страхового агента?
2. В нашем городе должно быть больше такси.
3. «Входите же», – впустил я его. – «Вам надо было постучать. Я не видел вас там».
4. – Мне казалось, она меня не любит.  
– Да любит же. Но вам надо было больше помогать ей с ребенком.
5. Я думаю, что тебе следует бросить бокс потому, что это такой опасный вид спорта.
6. Я спросил Клайда, где мне его ждать.
7. С какой стати было отцу скрывать свой развод?
8. У нее было заведено, что коту не место в спальне, но это правило она частенько нарушала.
9. Уейд вынул из кармана свернутый листок. «Вам надо было давно отдать его мне», – сказал Чарльз Сабин.
10. Ей бы не мешало последить за своей манерой общения.
11. Вам следует обратить внимание на ваше произношение.
12. Мисс Пиил, мне кажется, вам надо бы выйти замуж за мистера Стэнтона.
13. Как же мог я быть таким глупым! Мне следовало было понять, что нельзя терять время.

14. Мне надо было сразу же пойти к Амиасу (Amyas) и предупредить его, что Каролина украла яд.

15. «А вы знаете, что Тителбаум (Tittlebaum) сказал мне сегодня?» – задал он риторический вопрос. «Откуда мне, черт побери, знать?»

**147**  Read the ad and say what advice you could give your relative or friend if he/she happens to have hernia (грыжа).

# HERNIA

**FACT:** Hernias need to be repaired as soon as possible - and as well as possible

**No:** The Old Approach...  
 • General anaesthesia  
 • spinal injections  
 • pain • weeks or months off work  
 • long waiting lists  
 • the high cost of private care  
 • high recurrence rates

# YES:

Typically:	THE BRITISH HERNIA CENTRE	MOST PRIVATE HOSPITALS	MOST NHS HOSPITALS
• Only LOCAL anaesthesia required	✓	×	×
• Short waiting lists	✓	✓	×
• No need for a bed - even after the op	✓	×	×
• Back to normal routine within <i>days</i>	✓	×	×
• Able to climb stairs within minutes	✓	×	×
• Able to walk miles the next day	✓	×	×
• Able to resume sport within days	✓	×	×
• Able to resume driving within days	✓	×	×
• Dedicated, specialist hernia unit - nothing but hernias all day, every day	✓	×	×

**Reliable against recurrence for life**  
 (Less than one percent chance of recurrence!)

---



---



---



---

**148**  If you were a travel agent what suggestions and offers would you come up with to people

a) who haven't got much money to spend?  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

b) who want to see the most exotic places?  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

c) who want to relax and enjoy easy-going attitude to life?  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

149

**What advice/recommendation can be given in the situation described in the article? Use modal verbs.**

There are many fathers who go to court to fight for access to their children, mostly legally aided at huge expenses — only to turn up for two or three times and then lose interest.

The children are very confused that their father did all this and then, as he starts a new relationship, can't give them a fraction of their time.

What about their mothers, who have to pick up the pieces for their distressed children? They need a break, too — and the children need two caring parents. The children also need a break from their stressed-out mums. What is to be done?

150

**What are the main things people should do in their lifetime to your mind? a) Make a list of 3- 5 items. b) Choose one item and write a short essay.**

1. A person should give birth to a child.
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_

151

**Work with your partner. Read the statements and say what advice/recommendations could be given in the following situations.**

1. I was going to take my temperature, but I dropped the thermometer and it broke.
2. Ben's a chain smoker. He smokes between two or three packets a day, and at the age of 30 he has a weak chest. Last year he was in hospital 6 months when his lungs collapsed.
3. Alcoholism is a serious problem. An alcoholic is a "problem drinker". He or she cannot control his or her drinking. This drinking causes physical, emotional and social problems for the drinker and others.
4. Millions of people are handicapped. Some are blind or deaf, some cannot walk or talk, some are mentally retarded, others are disabled in some other way. They all want to be independent and to care for themselves.
5. Susan had her first daughter in a hospital, but she felt lonely, the nurses were too busy to be sympathetic, they were rude to her and didn't understand her feelings. She didn't like to have her baby with strangers.

152

**Ask your partner for advice. You don't know what to do, how to act on the first day at school as a teacher.**

1. *What do you think I should wear?*
2. *What should I do if ... ? etc.*

**153** Read a paragraph from *Sunday Express*, February, 1 2004 and write what suggestions Zara Phillips could come up with.



The Queen is recovering from her knee operation thanks to a keep-fit program designed by her granddaughter Zara Phillips. Zara, 22, has a degree in equine physiotherapy.

**Tips:** regular swimming in Windsor Castle pool, the use of exercise bike, gentle exercises using ankle weights while sitting down watching TV, staying active to strengthen the muscles...

**154**

**TEST YOURSELF:** spot the error if any and correct it (*must, should, ought to*)

1. My scarf isn't there. Somebody should have taken it by mistake.
2. Your mother and I think Jean-Claude should have come and stay with us till he's stronger.
3. These pills should always been kept in a dark place.
4. Instead of spending his whole salary, Hank ought to saving some of it.
5. – Den's asked me to his birthday party.  
– That should have been fun.
6. If a person should observe someone acting violently towards another person, he ought to at least notify the police.
7. Let's go and see the wild flowers. They should be blooming now.
8. You oughtn't apply unless you're qualified.
9. – Excuse me. Can I use my mobile? – No, I'm sorry. You must not use your phone until the plane takes off.
10. If she wishes to get the job, she should get in touch with Mr. Brook at once.
11. I knew I should give up smoking, but it was too difficult.
12. I see no reason why I don't eat meat.



# MUST – BE TO – HAVE TO – NEED – SHOULD compared

**155** DEFINE the modal meanings expressed in the sentences and **REPHRASE** the sentences using the appropriate modal verb.

1. We agreed that we should talk with him about the missing money.
2. It's highly probable that your damned lying drove her to suicide.
3. I advise that you should go to the police station and tell them everything.
4. It's our duty to stop him taking the drugs.
5. Stacy complains about her husband coming home late every night. She is almost sure he has another woman.
6. I'm so sorry. It's obvious it's hurting you.
7. We can't blame her. Something like that was expected to happen.
8. Residents here are prohibited to play music after 11 p.m.
9. There was no need to be in a hurry with the news. I'm in the know.
10. The nurse was supposed to look after him but she didn't.
11. I know it obviously seems mad to you, but I love to cook.
12. You'd better not eat so much meat.
13. My suit looked shabby. That made me buy a new one.

**156** **REPHRASE** the sentences using the appropriate modal verb or its equivalent.

<p>I advise you to mow the grass.</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>I've nothing to do but return the debt. You are not allowed to play here.</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>We are obliged to follow the rules. What am I suppose to wear for this kind of party?</p> <p>_____</p> <p>It would've been better to use an alarm clock. I decide it's necessary to do something about the fence.</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>The circumstances made me spend Christmas with them.</p>	<p>_____</p> <p>You must have this shirt dry-cleaned You must obey the law. You should water this plant daily.</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>You must leave the bathroom tidy. Your group is to advertise the product on TV.</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>Do I have to work all night?</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>We are to start the new program next week.</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>
---	---

**157** FILL IN the appropriate infinitive.

1. If anyone should \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) bad about it, it's Cordelia.
2. 'But you must \_\_\_\_\_ (come) over for dinner sometimes,' she said, surprising herself because she'd never invited them over before.
3. - The trip will only be for a day or so. - I don't think you should \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) away any longer.
4. I must \_\_\_\_\_ (make) some ecstatic noise because the cabman jerked his head and examined me in the mirror.
5. I felt I had to \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) somebody, and you were the nearest person.
6. They are to \_\_\_\_\_ (check out) some of the kitchen ware shops in the city to buy a few bits and pieces.
7. Yes, we understand that. You needn't \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) us.
8. 'I really didn't know about it, Sheila. Please believe me.' 'Why? Why should I \_\_\_\_\_ (believe) anything you tell me now?'
9. Maybe you ought \_\_\_\_\_ (deliver) the lecture via the Internet.
10. We were \_\_\_\_\_ (see) the large impressive stones of Stonehenge but we went to Bath instead.
11. - What are you reading?  
- World History.  
- Wow! You must \_\_\_\_\_ (be) very intellectual.
12. It was a lovely island and you should \_\_\_\_\_ (see) more of it.
13. When we first took our children to sea with us we were anxious but we needn't \_\_\_\_\_ (worry). It turned out to be a character building experience.
14. Your eyes are red. You must \_\_\_\_\_ (cry).
15. Let me remind you. If you are invited to dance, you must \_\_\_\_\_ (not refuse)

**158** Complete the sentences, using *must not* or *don't have to*.

1. Passengers \_\_\_\_\_ lean put of the windows.
2. You \_\_\_\_\_ drive so fast - we are not in a hurry.
3. You \_\_\_\_\_ drive so fast - you'll have an accident.
4. In football you \_\_\_\_\_ touch the ball with your hands.
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ call me before you drop in at my place.
6. Tomorrow is Sunday. We \_\_\_\_\_ work.
7. It rained at night, so we \_\_\_\_\_ water the flowers.
8. Residents \_\_\_\_\_ play music after 10 p.m.
9. You \_\_\_\_\_ finish the essay today if you are not inclined to.
10. You \_\_\_\_\_ interrupt me when I'm speaking.

**159** Complete the sentences, using *must not* or *needn't*.

1. Residents \_\_\_\_\_ (not smoke) inside.
2. You \_\_\_\_\_ ( finish) the essay today if you are not inclined to.
3. You \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) such an expensive ring. I would've been happy with a smaller diamond.
4. Hurray, I'm on holiday at last, and I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the office.
5. My boy, you \_\_\_\_\_ (play) with matches
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ (look) at the speaker steadily.

7. You \_\_\_\_\_ (help) me. I can do it myself.
8. My aunt says I \_\_\_\_\_ (flirt) with you
9. You \_\_\_\_\_ (wash up) now. I'll do it later.
10. Visitors \_\_\_\_\_ (feed) the animals.

**160** I read the notice: Cars \_\_\_\_\_ (park) here.

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ (frame) the picture now. It can wait.
2. Andrew repaired his bike so he \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) a new one.
3. You \_\_\_\_\_ (ask) a woman her age. It's not polite.
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ (ask) Mrs Stanly her age. She may get offended.
5. We \_\_\_\_\_ (worry). Stacy's new friend turned out an honest man.
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ (worry) so much. You look rather exhausted.
7. My friend gave me a lift to the station yesterday. So I \_\_\_\_\_ (take) a taxi.
8. To my mind you \_\_\_\_\_ (present) her with a parrot. She won't be pleased as she is not fond of birds.
9. You \_\_\_\_\_ (drink) this: it's poison.
10. You \_\_\_\_\_ (bring) your raincoat. It's not going to rain.
11. I'm glad I \_\_\_\_\_ (call) my mother's boyfriend. Nobody insists on it.
12. You \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) fast. There was a speed limit there.

**161** MAKE UP sentences using the modal verbs.

You	shouldn't needn't mustn't	strike the matches, my little boy. repair the car. It's OK. take a break now. Our boss won't like it. wear black. It doesn't become you. wear black. It's not an official party. quit until you find another job. turn on the gas. I'm not cold. open the door to strangers. use your cell phone in the theater. take her words for granted.
-----	---------------------------------	---

**162** CHOOSE between *shouldn't* and *needn't* and the appropriate Infinitive.

1. What did I do wrong? - You \_\_\_\_\_ these two wires.  
 A. needn't have connected                      B. shouldn't have connected
2. Why are you so displeased? - You \_\_\_\_\_ her my address.  
 A. shouldn't've given                              B. needn't've given
3. She knows the news, doesn't she? - Yes, we \_\_\_\_\_ her.  
 A. needn't have phoned                              B. shouldn't have phoned
4. There's much juice left over from the party. - Yes, we \_\_\_\_\_ so many cartons.  
 A. shouldn't have bought                              B. needn't have bought



**164** FILL IN the blanks with

- (a) *shouldn't do*;  
(b) *shouldn't have done*;  
(c) *needn't have done*.

1. Marvin was my boyfriend. He \_\_\_\_\_ (go) out to the restaurant with Drew.
2. You \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the hairdresser's, you could've done your hair yourself.
3. – You shouldn't worry.  
– I know. You needn't have told me that. But I can't help worrying.
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ (hire) a taxi. I could've given you a lift.
5. You shouldn't wear grey. It doesn't become you.
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ (give) Hubert any honey. You know he is allergic to it. His face has begun to swell out.
7. – Dear, I'm happy to have helped you. I've put salt in the soup.  
– Oh, boy. You \_\_\_\_\_ (do) it. I wish you hadn't done it. I've already put some.
8. – The Sicilian sauce tastes delicious. But you really \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to all this trouble, Ash. I'm afraid it took you so much time.  
– It's no trouble. I could do this in my sleep, Molly.
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) Mum about the incident. She already knew everything.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) Mum about the incident. She got very much upset.
11. You \_\_\_\_\_ (worry) yesterday about how to write a letter to your cousin. He is coming tomorrow to see us.
12. To my mind a teacher \_\_\_\_\_ (be) so strict with children.
13. You \_\_\_\_\_ (invite) Phil. He did most of the talking.

**165** FILL IN the blanks with

- (a) *didn't have to do*;  
(b) *needn't have done*;  
(c) *shouldn't have done*

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) at home last night. I wish I hadn't. Everyone enjoyed the party.
2. You \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) four flights of stairs. You could've taken the lift.
3. You \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) your car windows open during the storm. The car radio needs repairing now.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) long. Samuel was only five minutes late.
5. When Susan was at college, she \_\_\_\_\_ (rent) a room. She lived with her grandparents.
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ (write) a research paper. A written test might've been all right.
7. Sue \_\_\_\_\_ introduce me to Dave. We had already met. So I took a goblet of wine and came up to him.
8. You \_\_\_\_\_ (change) your major. It will be difficult to find a job in this field upon graduation.
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ (change) my roommate. Dave and I got on very well.

10. They \_\_\_\_\_ (cut) down all the trees in the park. The motorway took only part of the land where the park had been.
11. The bread is stale and the ham itself is turning rather brown at the edges. We \_\_\_\_\_ (order) this kind of sandwich.
12. My sister offered me a lift, so I \_\_\_\_\_ (call) a taxi.

**166** Choose the most **SUITABLE RESPONSE** to each comment or question.

1. He lived on the money his father gave him.
  - a) He didn't have to work.
  - b) He needn't have worked.
2. Why have we stopped?
  - a) We should have missed the turning.
  - b) We must have missed the turning.
3. It's the wrong colour.
  - a) I didn't need to use this kind of paint.
  - b) I shouldn't have used this kind of paint.
4. Each member of the team is wearing a medal.
  - a) They should have won.
  - b) They had to win.
  - c) They must have won.
5. What do you think of the game?
  - a) Our team had to win.
  - b) Our team should have won.
6. She kissed him on the cheek.
  - a) He must have been pleased.
  - b) He was to be pleased.
  - c) He needn't have been pleased.
7. We've got a lot of wine left over from the party.
  - a) We couldn't have bought so much wine.
  - b) We must have bought so much wine.
  - c) We needn't have bought so much wine.
8. -The doctor can't see you today. - That's a pity. \_\_\_\_\_
  - a) I should have called him.
  - b) I must have called him.
  - c) I had to call him.
9. He must be giving up smoking.
  - a) It's a bad example to his son.
  - b) He's been nervous lately.
  - c) He has a bad cough.
10. He needn't have changed his car.
  - a) His new car isn't worthy of the money.
  - b) It must have been very old.
  - c) His old Ford was also a first-rate car.

**167** Make the RIGHT MATCH.

1 The children shouldn't tease Fanny	a) the car won't start
2. We must have run out of petrol	b) Nick offered me a lift
3. You needn't have called the ambulance	c) It will do you harm.
4. You shouldn't eat so much chocolate	d) I'm much better now.
5. I didn't have to wait for the bus	e) I've already done it.
6. I must find a way to escape myself,	f) though I don't like it.
7. You needn't clean the windows	g) though she is fat.
8. I have to wear glasses.	h) nobody can help me.


**168** Make REASONABLE COMBINATIONS. Put the ticks in the left column.

You needn't You'll have You are You should You are supposed	to paint the fence.
It ought It must It is It is expected	never be sold.
It didn't ought Did it have It needn't It was	to have happened.
You are to You needn't You must never You ought to	have done it.
You needn't You don't need to You were meant to You ought to have Have you ever had to	look after it.
Does it have Is it Need it Must it Should it Ought it	to be printed?

**169** Use the ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS for the Russian expressions in brackets.

1. My aunt and my cousin keep telling me that (мне следует) \_\_\_\_\_ settle down to married life. But I'm - I'm not ready for that yet.
2. Why (этим людям приходится жить) \_\_\_\_\_ like this, in idleness and misery? There (должны же быть) \_\_\_\_\_ jobs for them, good jobs, good housing.
3. He realized, suddenly, that whatever (ему не предназначалось бы делать, должно быть сделано) \_\_\_\_\_ swiftly.

4. It was freezing outside and he (пришлось соскрести) \_\_\_\_\_ a light covering of ice from the windscreen before getting into the car.
5. '(Надо постирать) \_\_\_\_\_ those trousers or (отдать их в чистку) \_\_\_\_\_ to the cleaner's?' she thought.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ (Можно было и не ходить) to this company for an interview. They accepted me without one as they knew about my inventions.
7. - (Мне нужно знать) \_\_\_\_\_ where you live. Is it a shelter?  
- Used to live in a shelter, but (пришлось уйти) \_\_\_\_\_. I've got a car. I sleep in the back.
8. Even if (мне придется ждать) \_\_\_\_\_ until 3 a.m. to sneak back to Chance's office, I will do it.
9. - It's the best surprise I've had in months.  
- (Ты, должно быть, ведешь) \_\_\_\_\_ a dreary life in that case.
10. That's queer. I don't mean it's queer your giving him the cigarette box. (Почему бы и нет?) \_\_\_\_\_? But it's queer your never mentioning it.
11. (Не надо ли приготовить) \_\_\_\_\_ a few pizzas for him?
12. She knew that (ей надо было быть благодарной) \_\_\_\_\_ because they had taken her into their home and into their family. But it wasn't what she wanted.
13. Guillaume was waiting outside the shop when I arrived, although the door was unlocked. 'You (надо было войти) \_\_\_\_\_ inside to wait for me,' I told him.
14. (Незачем было брать тебе) \_\_\_\_\_ the umbrella. We're in for a spell of good weather.
15. 'You (можешь не платить) \_\_\_\_\_.' 'I can pay,' the boy said with a kind of defiance. 'I've got the money.'

**170**  **Work with the partner. Is each of the following a rule, advisable, required, allowed or not allowed in Russian culture? Put a ✓ in the right column. Discuss the results with the group.**

	needn't	should	shouldn't	must	mustn't
write a thank you letter after you stayed with somebody					
hug and kiss people when you meet them					
ask how old the person is					
call your boss by his/her first name					
ask how much money the person gets					
smoke in public places					
give a gift/flowers when you are invited to a house					
wrap a gift and open it as you come					
present people with food					
talk about politics and religion in company					
take off your shoes when you enter a house/flat					
praise things in somebody else's house					
help wash up when you are a guest					
eat everything that is offered to you					



**171** SUPPLY the necessary modal verbs (*must, be to, have to, should/ought to, need*)

1. If your apartment is so big, you \_\_\_\_\_ rich.
2. You \_\_\_\_\_ leave the air condition on. It just wastes electricity. And besides you \_\_\_\_\_ pay much.
3. Well, I \_\_\_\_\_ be going. You'll hear from me later on.
4. 'Are you on a date?' asked my mother. 'No,' said Ash shortly. 'Now is Saturday night and a young one like you \_\_\_\_\_ be out and about.'
5. When the soup arrived, she \_\_\_\_\_ admit that it was excellent.
6. If you don't come to the table now, I \_\_\_\_\_ send you to bed without any supper.
7. 'He played some soccer,' Bob added, his voice unable to conceal his pride. 'You \_\_\_\_\_ have seen him. He's really very good.'
8. A landlord \_\_\_\_\_ provide heat in cold weather.
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ have hurried to cook dinner. Just as it was ready, my husband phoned me to say that he would come much later.
10. She \_\_\_\_\_ be a nice person – I'm sure she is a nice person – but she'll never amount to anything.
11. You \_\_\_\_\_ work harder if you want to have a better grade.
12. Her son was in prison at that time. But Patric had never mentioned it either to Trudy or Eve. Why \_\_\_\_\_?
13. I understood that it would be followed with a second marriage that \_\_\_\_\_ take place very shortly.
14. According to the divorce decree he \_\_\_\_\_ pay her the sum of one hundred thousand dollars in cash.
15. They \_\_\_\_\_ have been married less than a week when he left her. She will suffer much. You \_\_\_\_\_ console her.

**172** WORK ON YOUR OWN: translate into English and then into Russian.

1. – Я поставлю бокалы в посудомо- ечную машину. – Нет, не надо. Они могут разбить- ся. Их нужно мыть отдельно.	1. – I'll put the goblets in the dishwash- er. – No. You shouldn't. They might break. You must wash each by hand.
2. Разве у вас не было соглашения с мистером Сабинном, по которому вы должны были получить развод?	2. Didn't you have an agreement with Mr Sabin by which you were to get a divorce?
3. Думаю, мне надо заполучить ос- новные факты потому, что старший Сабин, должно быть, не захочет го- ворить об убийстве.	3. I suppose I should get the highlights, because the elder Sabin probably won't want to talk about the murder.
4. Я думаю, это наш старый друг сержант Холком из городского управления.... Ну, а ему-то чего ради интересоваться убийством, которое произошло за городом?	4. I believe it's our friend, Sergant Hol- comb, from the headquarters ... Now, why should <i>he</i> be interested in a mur- der case which took place outside the city?

<p>5. – Незачем брать перчатки. Тепло. – Но может похолодать к вечеру. – Ну, тогда береги их. Не теряй.</p> <p>6. Им можно было и не брать такси. Ресторан всего в десяти минутах ходьбы. Могли бы и пешком туда пойти.</p> <p>7. Маргарет начала жалеть, что в конце концов остановилась в коттедже. Возможно, ей следовало остановиться в Бостоне в квартире. По крайней мере, ей не пришлось бы вставать рано по выходным.</p> <p>8. «Если уж ей и суждено упасть», сказала Миссис Алмонд с мягкой улыбкой, «то мы должны подстелить как можно больше соломки».</p> <p>9. – Сабин говорил отсюда, из хижин? – Нет, он сказал Уэйду, что телефон вышел из строя, и ему пришлось идти на телефонную станцию. Он не сказал куда, а Уэйду и в голову не пришло спросить его. А надо было.</p> <p>10. Миссис Уолмэн слегка за 30. Человек, за которого она вышла замуж, должно быть, лет на двадцать старше ее ... Но я не должна сплетничать. Я думаю, не мое это дело. В конце концов, вышла замуж за него <i>она</i>, а не я.</p>	<p>5. – You needn't take your gloves. It's warm. – It might get cold by the evening. – Well, look after them. You mustn't lose them.</p> <p>6. They needn't have hired a taxi. The restaurant is within a ten-minute walk. They could've got there on foot.</p> <p>7. Margaret began to wish she hadn't stayed in the cottage after all. Or perhaps she should have stayed in Boston, in the apartment. She wouldn't have had to get up early on weekends, at least.</p> <p>8. 'If she is to have a fall,' said Mrs Almond, with a gentle smile, 'we must spread as many carpets as we can.'</p> <p>9. – Was Sabin talking from the cabin here? – No, he told Waid the telephone had gone dead so he'd had to go to a pay station. He didn't say where, and Waid didn't think to ask him. But he should've.</p> <p>10. Mrs Wallman is in her early thirties. The man she married must be twenty years older than she is ... There, I mustn't go gossiping. I suppose it's none of my business. After all <i>she</i> married him, <i>I</i> didn't.</p>
--	---

**173** TRANSLATE into English.

1. Да можно было и не закрывать окно. Я не возражаю против свежего воздуха.
2. – Мне следовало иметь временную работу, когда я учился в колледже, с тем, чтобы теперь не приходилось бы выплачивать студенческий кредит.
3. Она слышала, как учащенно бьется сердце, и ей пришлось начать считать про себя, чтобы успокоиться.
4. – Нора родила мальчика на прошлой неделе.  
– После трех девочек, она, наверняка, обрадовалась.

5. Видно, Гордон решил, что ему необходимо закатывать истерику при каждом упоминании о Мартине.

6. Рождество – единственное время, когда действительно следует быть со своей семьей.

7. Моя подруга развелась недавно, мне нужно поддержать ее.

8. «Ты ведь не собираешься уезжать сегодня, да?» Мистер Краст внезапно встал. «Вынужден ехать. Это бизнес. Очень важно». Руки его тряслись. Видя его в таком возбуждении, Миссис Марбэри попыталась его успокоить. «Ну, если ты чувствуешь, что должен, то должен».

9. Я бы чувствовала себя легче, если бы вам не пришлось заезжать за мной (come and get me). Должно быть, вы потратили много времени.

10. Скорее всего, я буду вынужден назначить встречу с Миссис Уолмен на какое-то другое время.


11. – Я не могу так ее жалеть, как хотела бы и как надо бы жалеть.

– Вам незачем жалеть ее. С какой стати вам жалеть Бетти?

12. – Думаю, мне не следует быть так против ее увлеченности работой.  
– Многим не все равно, какая у них работа. Мне, например, тоже не безразлична моя.

– Должно быть, я абсолютно старомодный в душе. И эгоистичный. Мне никогда и в голову не приходило подумать о ее чувствах.

– Очевидно, ты думал, она любит тебя. И ты был прав. Да, любит.

**174**  **Read the letter and write what is to be done/should be done to make your city a green park.**

*Dear Sir,*

*I am writing to say that I, for one, believe that the parks of London are London's great glory. Yet, Londoners, knowing that they have within walking distance of wherever they live a green and space, often take their parks for granted. We, visitors from Tokyo, New York and Stockholm, do not. We realize how unique are London's parks, and really admit that no other city in the world is so richly endowed with parks.*

**175**  **Look at the picture.**

**(a) Say if the girl could have any problems, list them;**

**(b) give possible reasons for the problems;**


**(c) write recommendations/suggestions Use modal verbs;**

**(d) say if there's any hope for the girl.**



**AT RISK:** Becky was warned of heart attacks

**Tips:** have an obsession with food; have poor muscle tone; at 17 she weighs about 20st (1стоун =14 фунтов=16.34кг; have learning difficulties; become secretive; is bullied at school; spends all her money on chocolate, cakes and biscuits; early death; it is as if the on/off switch which tells she is full isn't working; have Prader-Willi syndrome(синдром Прадера - Вилли (наследственное сочетание умственной отсталости, низкого роста, ожирения, гипотонии мышц); hereditary; has the missing chromosome which causes the syndrome; difficult to diagnose; incurable; a stomach stapling operation; follow a strict diet.

**176**  Look at the photos of two brothers Shaun Maye, aged 11 and 14-year-old Stephan Maye.



Sneezing: Stephen (left) and Shaun Maye ruled the street by fear

**a) Judging by appearances say what sort of boys they might be. Could appearances be deceitful?**

In fact, the brothers were accused of breaking into the neighbours' homes, carrying knives and driving stolen cars, openly downing beer and smoking cannabis (марижуана). They were also accused of throwing stones, bricks and eggs at windows, placing smashed glass under car tyres, menacing people with a cricket bat, teaching toddlers to swear, swearing at the elderly.

The boys' mother slammed the door of the house in the neighbours' faces when they came to speak to her.

**b) Say what *should/must* be done to avoid such ill behaviour.**

**177** Read the letter, write an answer, express your attitudes, use modal verbs.

*My father was a belt-and-strap man. I'm 70 now and still have scars on my back as a reminder of a man I could only hate, not love. I learned early on the way to get what I wanted in life was to use force. People were scared of me and I enjoyed the power until I hit my wife once too often and she left me.*

*I may be making excuses, but if my father hadn't regularly laid into me, I might have lived a better life.*

*I know the government plans to toughen up the law on parents physically punishing their children. But many parents say they should be able to punish their children severely in whatever way they like. What do you think?*

**Tips:** harsh upbringing may influence people;  
cause violent behaviour and criminality in later life;  
smacking is cruel, barbaric and doesn't work;  
mental health problems in adulthood (depression, suicidal thoughts, alcohol misuse);  
antisocial behaviour;  
encouraging good behaviour with praise and love is more effective;  
parenting education should be widely spread;  
discipline can't be belted out.

**178** TEST YOURSELF: spot the errors in the use of modals if any and correct them.

1. The mail was to arrive an hour ago, but it didn't.
2. So you have to work there as the hotel roving photographer and reporter, haven't you?
3. I think it ought to have stopped raining by now. Let's go outside.
4. "You see, I didn't know what to say or even who to ask about it". "You should ask me," she said later.
5. The electricity went out because of the storm and people were to use candles to be able to see.
6. It would be good to see you, but you needn't come if you are busy.
7. Now imagine Mr. Cavilleri's reaction if Barret informed him that for the next three years his daughter has to support his son-in-law.
8. Don't ever let me hear you talk like that. A father's love is to be cherished and respected. It's rare.
9. So I asked him what to do. I mean what I ought to have done. He told me to act as normal as possible for as long as possible.
10. This is a Swiss watch, so it should be first-rate.
11. Bob's wife fell seriously ill and he has to do housekeeping himself ever since.
12. I always slept through the alarm clock; my Mum must have woken me up every morning.

# SHALL

## 179 TRANSLATE into Russian and COMMENT on the contextual and pragmatic meanings of *shall*.

1. The rights of people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable search and seizure, **shall** not be violated. (The Bill of Rights. Amendment [IV])
2. I **shall** not return unless paid to do so.
3. I see you're not going to part with Pamela. You **shall** pay for this.
4. All right, my dear. You **shall** have a new fur coat.
5. **Shall** I have to admit that all your accusations were directed at me?
6. Blessed are the peacemakers. For they **shall** be called the children of God.
7. **Shall** I leave a message if you are away?
8. Where **shall** I tell her to meet you for dinner?
9. Correct me if I am wrong, but I think you are interested in – character, **shall** we say?
10. **Shall** I ring up Jack and get him to call for you?
11. **Shall** we go and try Fabian's punch?

## 180 Translate into English.

1. Ты мне нужна. Слушай. Я обещаю, ты будешь иметь все деньги, которые ты хочешь, и новую машину. Твоя старая слишком капризная.
2. – Посмотрим телевизор?  
– Думаю, да. Больше делать нечего.
3. «Что мне делать с собакой?» – спросила Мэри мужа.
4. Я обещаю, ты ни за что не будешь мыть посуду, дорогая. Девушке твоего ума не полагается тратить время на такие мелочи.
5. Бороду только подрезать?
6. Эта книга не должна и не будет перепродаваться без предварительного согласия издателя.
7. Снять трубку?
8. Будем мы представлять общественности факты их банкротства, в конце концов?
9. Не уедешь ты без моего разрешения!
10. Перейдем к вопросу номер три?
11. Я боялся отводить взгляд от Дженни: «Я обещаю, все будет хорошо, и мы непременно поедем в Париж».
12. «Ты бессердечное животное. И ты еще пожалеешь о том, что сказал», – и она повесила трубку.

**181** Read the list of complaints of an old lady. OFFER her help.

1. - I can't sleep at night. - *Shall I ask the doctor to give you sleeping pills?* \_\_\_\_\_
2. I've got so much work to do in the garden. - \_\_\_\_\_
3. - My old Jaguar has broken down. - \_\_\_\_\_
4. - I'm afraid of burglars. - \_\_\_\_\_
5. - I hate fast food. - \_\_\_\_\_
6. - My neighbours are always making so much noise at night.  
- \_\_\_\_\_
7. -The neighbour's dog barks day and night. - \_\_\_\_\_
8. - I'm so lonely. - \_\_\_\_\_

# WILL / WOULD

## 182 COMMENT on the meanings of *WILL* and TRANSLATE the sentences into Russian.

1. – Be careful, Linda.  
– I **will**.
2. – Lot's of people work there. You'll do well.  
– I hope so.  
– You **will**.
3. Accidents **will** happen in the best regulated families.
4. I'll be grateful if you **will** do what you can for me.
5. But Joe Riley is a stubborn man. He **won't** give in an inch.
6. And keep an eye on the guys in the yard, **will** you?
7. – Only please take care. Don't spoil the barbeque.  
– I **won't**. I've been practicing all weekend.
8. **Will** you get a taxi for me, please?
9. – You **will come** with me!  
– Why?  
– You don't need to know why. You need only to know I **will not abandon** a helpless woman. I **will not leave** you.
10. – I have to head back to Washington. I have a committee meeting.  
– Have a good flight.  
– Now I **will**, son. Now I **will**.
11. – Poor girl is just snowed under with work (завалена работой). She wants so much to prove herself.  
– I'm sure she **will**.  
– I know she **will**. She's doing the training course
12. 'We all hope you'll be home soon.' 'I **will**,' promised Cordelia.
13. 'What'll you do when the money runs out?' 'It **won't**,' said Alistair. 'I'm still working, you know.'

## 183 COMMENT on the meanings of *WOULD* and TRANSLATE the sentences into Russian.

1. – Could you do something about it?  
– Even if I could, I **wouldn't**.
2. I told my daughter over and over to stay out, but she **wouldn't** listen.
3. It **would** interest me, my friend, very much, if you **would** tell me why?
4. Lou rushed to the door. She turned the handle, but the door **would not** open.
5. 'Is it true, Amyas?' He **wouldn't** look at her, turned his face away and mumbled something.
6. You're in my way. **Would** you mind stepping aside, please?
7. The hurricane **wouldn't** stop.
8. – What happened to the baby?– Died.– That **would** be your brother.– Nope. Sister.
9. For years after Julia's death, Ash was afraid to go to sleep. She **would** switch on the bedside lamp and read until she couldn't keep her eyes open any longer.



10. 'So how's our boy?' Mr. Riddlerton asked. 'That **would** be...?' 'Come on. I mean our boy Patrick.'
11. **Would** you join us in a drink? My *chococcino* is wonderful if you have a delicate throat.
12. My father **would** always read the last page first.
13. What was she saying? She couldn't let him walk away. She **wouldn't** lose him.
14. I tried hard but the car **wouldn't** start.

**184** Read the text, analyze the communicative meanings and the functions of the verb *would*.

### SEAN

Sean was a very well brought-up grey cat and was very conscious of that fact. As he was well-fed and cared for, Sean had no trouble defending his territory and then he would stalk around, declaring to any watching creature that he was monarch.



There were not many visitors to their house and those that did come were mostly well known to Sean. Of course, he would not jump up onto their lap or rub himself against their legs as some cats would do, but he would check them over all the same, making sure that they had wiped their feet on the doormat and had not brought any mud into the house.

Every Tuesday, his mistress would be hostess to a number of her friends. The pretext was that they would all bring their sewing and discuss patterns and colours, but in fact the sewing was very much a secondary matter as they came to exchange the latest gossip rather than the latest design. The ladies all knew Sean well, and he would condescend to allow them to stroke him and admire his immaculate coat, commenting favourably on its excellent condition.

In common with all cats, Sean was curious. The tea or biscuits were of no interest, but his mistress' van certainly was! There he would investigate all the items of furniture and the mistress' old bed. At home, he would never have dreamed of walking on the furniture, but here he had the time of his life exploring deeper and deeper into the van.

Once Sean was trapped inside the van. When he was investigating the gloomy interior of the van, he suddenly heard a loud clang, and the door was soundly bolted. He could do nothing but wait until the morning and see what a new day would bring.

(Abridged from David Wright's publication for "School English.")

**a) Translate the sentences into ENGLISH focusing on WILL.**

1. – О, Джессика, Билл такой добрый, мягкий человек, и он так любит тебя.  
Держись за него.  
– Конечно, буду. Об этом ты не беспокойся.
2. – Я хочу, чтобы ты навела порядок в своей комнате.  
– Не буду, не хочу.
3. Он такой лентяй. Он никогда и пальцем не пошевелит, чтобы что-нибудь сделать по дому.
4. Не то, чтобы он болезненно застенчив. Он просто не желает ни с кем общаться.
5. Что-то с зонтиком. Вероятно, сломался. Никак не открывается.
6. Ден такой упрямый. Он никогда ни за что не слушает, что ему говорят.
7. – На твоём месте, я бы согласился на эту работу. – Ни за что.
8. – Ну, а теперь что? Что ты намерен делать?  
– Не знаю, чего я хочу. Но я просто не желаю продавать башмаки всю свою жизнь. В этом я абсолютно уверен.
9. Я нажимаю и нажимаю на крышечку, а она никак не открывается.
10. Последнее время он пропадает в своем охотничьем домике в горах. Он любит это и часами будет просиживать на крылечке и наблюдать за птицами.
11. «Вы не должны так уж сильно полагаться на судьбу», – сказал доктор. – Заверяю вас, что я буду постоянно думать о вас и не терять вас из виду».
12. Нет, не хочу, чтобы у нашей дочери были плохие друзья. Поэтому она ни в коем случае не пойдет на вечеринку.
13. Пожалуйста, отойдите в сторонку. Мне не видно картину.
14. – Куда ты уезжаешь?  
– Собираюсь заняться делом. Тебе это кажется странным?  
– Да ... Скорее нет. Нет, если ты пожелаешь взять меня с собой.

**b) Translate the sentences into English focusing on WOULD.**

1. – Они нашли ее отца в Рио.  
– Да, но он отказался с ними разговаривать. И адвокаты тоже.
2. Лэниган признал, что деньги спрятаны в различных банках, но он не желал их называть.
3. Патрика хотели поместить в конце крыла госпиталя, но дверь в палату никак не открывалась.
4. Вы бы не возражали приготовить нам кофе?
5. Мой друг, меня бы заинтересовало ваше предложение, если бы вы соизволили объяснить мне мою выгоду в этом деле.
6. Он, бывало, частенько захаживал в этот паб.
7. Я собиралась позвонить тебе, когда пришла домой, но дети никак не оставляли меня одну.

8. Если ее кот выходил на охоту, он ни за что не возвращался в дом, сколько бы она его не звала.
9. Я бы была очень благодарна вам, если бы вы были столь любезны представить меня Генри Чемберсу.
10. Он сел напротив нее. Она не желала начинать разговор, так что после долгого молчания он спросил: «Что я могу сделать для тебя?»
11. Она сказала, что может созвать так много гостей на свадьбу, но он и слушать не желал.
12. Они, бывало, часами спорили о том, как организовать свою жизнь после выхода на пенсию.
13. Каролина не собиралась бездействовать. Она ни за что не будет ждать, пока Мередит обнаружит пропажу.
14. Я тот час же направилась к нему и сообщила, что я собираюсь предпринять. Но он все-таки мне не поверил.
15. Я ещё раз попытался перезагрузиться, но программа никак не срабатывала.

**186** Translate the sentences into English focusing on WILL and WOULD.

1. Ребекка нетерпеливо нажала на ручку. «Не могу. Никак не открывается».
2. «Береги себя». «Обещаю», – сказал Генри. Но она не была уверена, что поверила ему.
3. Она наблюдала за ним с интересом, хотя он не желал встречаться с ней взглядом.
4. – Что тебя гнетет? – Я обязательно расскажу тебе. Но не сейчас.
5. Марианна решительно не хотела говорить или слышать об Элли.
6. Лиза не знала Кэлвина Лэма, но она настойчиво все время расспрашивала всех вокруг.
7. Я думаю, что смогу прояснить ситуацию, если вы соблаговолите выслушать меня.
8. Каждое утро, когда Молли входила будить Эш, она находила ее спящей на открытой странице книги, и каждое утро она выговаривала Эш не читать до полночи.
9. Эш не наносила Мишель частые визиты. Но каждый раз, когда она это делала, та постоянно говорила ей неприятные вещи, заставляющие Эш чувствовать себя незваной гостьей (feel unwelcome).
10. «Не забудьте купить обручальное кольцо». Он засмеялся. «Ни за что».
11. Я никогда не принимаю ничью сторону. Никогда не делала этого и никогда не буду.
12. Он бы мог спасти ее жизнь, если бы она только соблаговолила позвонить ему.
13. Я бы очень была благодарна, если бы эти атаки все-таки прекратились.

**187** Say what requests you would make in the following situations.

1. It's stuffy in the room  $\implies$  **Would/ Will/ Could** you open the window, please?
2. You want the taxi to take you to the airport.
3. You need a porter to see to your luggage.
4. You'd rather have an aisle seat.
5. You'd like the chemist to give you something for your cough.
6. You ask the travel agent to give you information about Caribbean cruises.
7. You'd like to get out of the car.
8. You need to know how to get to Trafalgar Square.

**188** Use the expressions from the box and the modal verbs *will* or *would* to express characteristic behaviour (positive or negative).

give excellent marks	sit staring into the fire	trust anyone
laugh and smile	listen to anybody else's opinion	
make friends easily	go out with girls	believe any lie
complain about everything	look on the dark side of everything	

1. Benjamin is an easy-going person. – *He will always laugh and smile* \_\_\_\_\_
2. Their teacher was so strict. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Don is so pessimistic. \_\_\_\_\_
4. William is a sociable person. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Nelly is so naive. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Elizabeth is self-assured. \_\_\_\_\_
7. After the accident he kept his room for weeks. \_\_\_\_\_
8. When at school I was very shy. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Mr Simpkins is very suspicious. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Stephanie is such a bore. \_\_\_\_\_

# DARE

189 Mark the sentences with *dare* as notional (N) or modal (M) verbs. Translate them into Russian.

1. I **dare not** protest.
2. She got up and went to the piano and played Bach. She **didn't dare to** look into his eyes.
3. Mrs Dursley sipped her tea through pursed lips. Mr Dursley wondered whether he **dared** tell her he'd heard the name "Potter". He decided he didn't **dare**.
4. 'When she died she left a letter in which she swore solemnly that she was innocent,' said Hercule Poirot. 'I **dare say** she did,' said Montague Depleach.
5. How **dare** you listen to a private conversation?
6. David always spoke out truths she **didn't dare to** confront herself.
7. Mr Cust hurried across the yard and into the street. **Dare** he risk the station? Yes – there would be crowds there – ...
8. The cat sat comfortably on the wire mesh, trying to push an oversized black paw through a hole the size of a two-pence piece. '**Don't you dare!**' Julia scolded.
- 9.



10. I'll tell Bess about Marks visits to you. – **You dare!**
11. – And you're trying to say we didn't show her our love?  
– No. Oh, no. It sounded like that, I guess. But I **wouldn't dare**.
12. I **dare** you to ask her about her age!
13. I **have never dared** to dive.
14. I **dare not** fold my arms about thee.

190 Translate into English.

1. Полагаю, вы добьетесь всего, чего хотите от них.
2. Никто не осмеливался называть его Змеей в лицо.
3. Спорим, ты не женишься на звезде экрана.
4. Она все еще не решалась двинуться с места или заговорить.

5. Осмелюсь сказать, было бы лучше, если бы она никогда не узнала правду.
6. Допускаю, что я старомодный, но, думаю, я прав.
7. Попробуй только сделать это еще раз!
8. А спорим тебе не переплыть реку!
9. – Я выброшу архив. – А я не смогла бы выбросить старые письма – мне просто не хватило бы решимости.
10. Да как ты смеешь что-либо говорить о чем-либо, чего совсем не знаешь!
11. Полагаю, вы слышали об этом.
12. Не смей дотрагиваться до меня.
13. – Я собираюсь уехать на Север. – И думать не смей.
14. Я никогда не осмеливалась прыгнуть с парашютом.
15. Держу пари, ты не уволишься с работы.

**191** **Rephrase the sentences.**

1. I was afraid to look at him.
2. Did you have the courage to speak with the headmaster?
3. I give a challenge: you will not survive here.
4. I have the courage to say that that he told you a lie.
5. I suppose she did her work well.
6. Are you brave enough to ask her?
7. How can you sauce (дерзить) your mother!
8. Don't laugh. Don't you ever laugh at me!

**192** **Respond to the statements, show indignation.**

1. – I am going to divorce your daughter. – *Don't you dare! / You dare!*  
– You're a liar. You can never keep secrets – *How dare you tell me that!*
2. –You swear like a sailor. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. – I'm going to give Jim a thousand dollars. – \_\_\_\_\_
4. – I say, you are a cheat. – \_\_\_\_\_
5. – I'm going to marry George. – \_\_\_\_\_
6. – Kitty, I'll tell mother I saw you strolling with a boy. – \_\_\_\_\_
7. – Bruce beats his dog to death. – \_\_\_\_\_
8. – I'll tell the police about it. – \_\_\_\_\_
9. – Mummy, can I cut out a rose from your picture? – \_\_\_\_\_
10. – You know, Doris is going to sell our father's priceless collection of old Russian paintings. – \_\_\_\_\_

**193** **Challenge your partner:**

1. to climb Everest. – *I dare you to climb Everest.*
2. to swim across the English Channel. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. to multiply 145 by 496. – \_\_\_\_\_
4. to stand on her/his head. – \_\_\_\_\_

5. to whistle through her/his teeth. - \_\_\_\_\_
6. to run one hundred metres in nine seconds. - \_\_\_\_\_
7. to cross the Atlantic on a small yacht. - \_\_\_\_\_
8. to live on an uninhabited island like Robinson Crusoe. - \_\_\_\_\_
9. to play the main part in a Hollywood film. - \_\_\_\_\_
10. to study full-time at two universities. - \_\_\_\_\_
11. to learn Chinese in a month. - \_\_\_\_\_
12. to become Chairman of British Gas. - \_\_\_\_\_

**194** **FILL IN the modal verbs:** *can – could, will – would – shall – should – ought to – dare.*

1. – You'll look after yourself, \_\_\_\_\_ you?  
– Sure, I \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Come to the restaurant with us then. You \_\_\_\_\_ be at home on your own at the weekend. It's not good for a girl of your age.
3. Have a good night. Drive carefully in such weather. – I \_\_\_\_\_, I promise.
4. "You see, there was always a certain – how \_\_\_\_\_ I put it? – antagonism between him and Caroline." "Why?" "Why? How \_\_\_\_\_ I know *why*? These things are so. Philip always crabbed her whenever he \_\_\_\_\_.
5. After dinner Ethel \_\_\_\_\_ often fall asleep in the chair in the living room.
6. How \_\_\_\_\_ you say such offending things to my daughter!
7. Brandan Chance was in my office an hour ago. He was anxious to see you. – About what? – He \_\_\_\_\_ say. But he's looking for you.
8. That's right, Mrs. Wilkinson, fatten her up, \_\_\_\_\_ you! She's getting thinner than she used to be.
9. 'Maggie, you look smart in the shorts. But I don't think you \_\_\_\_\_ come over there in them. These guys don't know this is the twentieth century.' Maggie laughed. 'Believe me, I \_\_\_\_\_.'
10. You are chilled, Nell. You \_\_\_\_\_ have stayed in the water so long.
11. The right of citizens of the United States to vote \_\_\_\_\_ not be denied or abridged by the United States of by any State on account of sex.(Amendment [XIX])
12. Whenever Dana's father was assigned to a new post, Dana was thrilled. 'We're going to move again!' she \_\_\_\_\_ exclaim.
13. He \_\_\_\_\_ not ask Jackie the question. He didn't have the courage.
14. Miss Jennet, when \_\_\_\_\_ I get the prints?
15. And I'd be grateful if you \_\_\_\_\_ quit blocking my sun.
16. Could you help me please? The window \_\_\_\_\_ open.
17. I \_\_\_\_\_ you to jump over the stream!

# REVISION

## MODAL VERBS

**195** ANALYSE the predicates. Comment on the contextual and pragmatic meanings of the modal verbs. TRANSLATE the sentences into Russian.

1. Newly married couples **shouldn't be deluded** that romance and marriage go together. Marriage has nothing to do with romance.
2. There are very few male teachers in our primary schools. One of the many bad effects of this **may be** that we are breeding a generation of milksops, unable to deal with rough edges of life.
3. The universities desperately need more money. But why **should this be provided** by those who **are to spend** their lives stacking shelves in their local supermarkets or sweeping the floors in a factory?
4. School uniforms **are to be brought** back in an effort to improve discipline in the classroom. They **can help** give pupils pride in their school and make them ambassadors for their school in the community.
5. **Shall I pick you up** at your office?
6. "I **can** understand Crale. You **must** realize, my friend, that at that moment, probably, his picture was all that mattered to Crale." "All this talk about *Art!* I never *have* understood it and I never **shall!** You **should have seen** that picture Crale was painting. All lopsided."
7. Oh, Lady Clarke, you **mustn't say** that. I did think Miss Grey a very nice girl.
8. He looked round fiercely, **daring** them to contradict.
9. There's one thing about being ill – men **can't argue** with you.
10. I've always been sorry for mad men – it **must be** so terrible.
11. I told you as much before you began dragging all this stuff out. Like a fool, you **wouldn't** leave me alone.
12. How careful do I **have to be** about what I eat? – Keep off pastry.
13. Where **could** Isa **have put** my cigars? **Can** she **have thrown** them away?
14. 'Look at those tracks. That **must** be a dog.' 'It **needn't be** – it **could be** a fox.'
15. You **needn't have watered** the flowers. Look at those dark clouds. It's going to rain.

**196** REPHRASE the sentence so that the second one has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Use the given words to complete each sentence.

1. It's possible that Bill has quit his job.  
**may** Bill \_\_\_\_\_ his job.
2. It wasn't necessary to send out those letters, but they did.  
**sent** They \_\_\_\_\_ that evening.
3. You are not allowed to take the books out.  
**mustn't** You \_\_\_\_\_ the books out.
4. I don't think the boss has been feeling well lately.  
**have** He \_\_\_\_\_ well lately.



5. I advise you not to get dressed up.

**should** You \_\_\_\_\_ dressed up.

6. I'm almost sure Bob rang up my wife.

**must** Bob \_\_\_\_\_ my wife.

7. You mustn't take photos in the museum.

**allowed** You \_\_\_\_\_ in the museum.

8. Diving is forbidden here.

**dive** You \_\_\_\_\_ here.

9. Perhaps he parked the car in the wrong place.

**might** He \_\_\_\_\_ in the wrong place.

10. Is it possible that high heeled shoes are going out of fashion?

**be** Could \_\_\_\_\_ out of fashion?

11. I don't believe that your son failed the exam.

**couldn't** He \_\_\_\_\_ the exam.

12. Would you mind if I used your telephone?

**use** Might \_\_\_\_\_ your telephone?

13. Why did you leave your shoes dirty?

**shouldn't** You \_\_\_\_\_ dirty.

**197** COMPLETE the sentences as in the example. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

1. I <i>must</i> _____ tell Terry the news.	personal understanding
2. You _____ park your car here.	prohibition
3. You _____ keep those CDs for as long as you like.	giving permission
4. You _____ put aside some money every week for your holidays.	advice
5. _____ you have drunk off a whole bottle of water?	doubt
6. I _____ put you up for the night if you can't find a hotel.	offer
7. You _____ take out a loan. I've got enough money.	absence of necessity
8. They _____ fix the roof by Saturday. I'm sure they'll manage it.	previously arranged plan
9. You _____ to tell the boss what has happened.	order
10. _____ you decorate Jim's birthday cake?	request
11. If you exceed the speed limit, you _____ pay a fine.	circumstantial obligation
12. You _____ have searched the van for the missing money.	criticism
13. We _____ put out the fire at all costs.	necessity
14. Don't forget to take your mobile phone. It's possible that someone _____ call you.	possibility

**198** FILL IN the blanks in the columns. Insert either the modal verb, or/and its meaning, or/and its equivalent.

<i>e.g.</i> ____ we go out tonight? <b><i>Shall</i></b> we go out tonight?	<i>offer</i>	<i>Let's go out tonight?</i>
1. You _____ stop trying to phone Ralf all day.	advice	
2. I have to type the letters before I go.		
3.		I believe it's necessary for me to retire.
4. You needn't phone Deborah now - tomorrow's OK.		
5. Don't worry. He _____ at the travel agency now.	supposition bordering on uncertainty	
6.		According to our plan you will make a list of last month's sales figures.
7. Can he have failed to hear me calling him?		
8. They _____ be getting on well.	supposition bordering on assurance	
9.		Perhaps there is a motive for the murder.
10. The car _____ start.	refusal	

**199** REPHRASE the sentences.

a)

1. Cordelia was meant to come with me, of course - we were invited ages ago. But she couldn't come to the ball in Ireland while she was working in the States.
2. Perhaps that's why they're leaving tonight.
3. It's a beautiful dress. Evidently it's new.
4. But afterwards I thought that maybe your friend would be annoyed and perhaps I'd put you in an awkward position.
5. Sofia tried hard but the door resisted to being latched.
6. Are you brave enough to jump from here into the river?
7. Mr. Brian often spent two or three days a week in New York that summer.
8. It's very unlikely that the boat could've reached them.
9. Is it possible that he should've prayed God Almighty for a good many months every year?
10. I'm almost sure he's been presiding over courts of law for years.

b)

1. I promise the visit will not awaken any real suspicion.
2. Maybe it was a false statement.
3. Perhaps the circumstances will even make us start wearing jackets.
4. I'd better make that telephone call first, and somewhere private.
5. And Monsieur Pelletier no doubt had plans for other things.
6. This is rural New York, not Boston. I can do nothing but get used to it.
7. There wasn't really need in buying another recipe book but this one was all about cooking vegetables.
8. It's unlikely Paul will be in court tomorrow.
9. Careful! You nearly fell off the pavement, Cordelia. The wine is certainly catching up with you.
10. Did she really ever think differently?

**200** Put marks (+) (-) against the possible and impossible matches.

- +	I must I had to I was to I should have I might	study very hard last night.
	You mustn't You can't You oughtn't You needn't I dare you	enter the tower.
	Shall we Do we need Has he to Will you How dare you	go?
	He can't He might not He must not He should not He is not to Can he not	have done it.
	She must Will you She is He dared He would	to phone us.
	Where could it possibly When is it to Ought it Could it Is it able to	be e-mailed?

At last he could He can't be He might prefer to He could wish He shouldn't	take a photo of the actress.
May you Need you Could you Don't you dare Shall you	show me the way there?
You mustn't You can't You needn't You won't You may	have seen the play.

**201** Choose the necessary forms from the box.

<b>ought to have understood</b>	<b>might as well know</b>
<b>must have been</b>	<b>didn't need to be told</b>
<b>how could you have been unaware</b>	<b>should enjoy</b>
<b>can you have told</b>	<b>can you be</b>
	<b>shouldn't have said that</b>

FREDA: You ...1..., Robert - and how ...2... so dense, I wonder - that Olwen is not your friend.

ROBERT: Of course she is.

FREDA: She's not. She's a woman who is in love with you - a very different thing. She's been in love with you for ages.

ROBERT: I'm terribly sorry, Olwen. I ... 3 .... We've always been very good friends and I've always been very fond of you.

OLWEN: Oh, Freda, that was unforgivable. You ... 4 ....

FREDA: But it's true, isn't it? I've been aware of it for the last eighteen months. Wives are always aware of these things, you know. And ...5... of it yourself, Robert? If somebody loves you like that, for God's sake you ... 6 ... it, make the most of it, hold on to it, before it's too late.

OLWEN: Freda, I understand now.

FREDA: Understand what?

OLWEN: About you. I ... 7 ... before.

ROBERT: If you mean that Freda doesn't care for me much - you're right.

We haven't been very happy together. Somehow our marriage hasn't worked. Nobody knows –

FREDA: Of course they know.

ROBERT: ... **8** ... them?

FREDA: No, of course I haven't told them. If you mean our group of people, they ... **9** .... They knew about that before.

1.	6.
2.	7.
3.	8.
4.	9.
5.	

**202** Choose the right variant.

**Brendan** – Guess what?

**Ash** – What?

**Brendan** – I've booked two tickets to the Canaries. We're going there for our holiday.

**Ash** – Brendan, ....**1** ....**can** you **have done** it? I ...**(2)**...**can't possibly go** on holiday with you.

**Brendan** – Of course you ... **(3)** ... **can**.

**Ash** – I have a business to run. When I take holidays I ... **(4)** ...**have to** work it out very carefully.

**Brendan** – I know you've got your own business. So have lots of people these days. But it ... **(5)** ...**must** give more flexibility, not less.

**Ash** – Don't be silly. I ...**(6)**...**can't believe** you just went and did it. You ...**(7)**...**can't have done** it. You ...**(8)**...**should have asked** me first.

**Brendan** – And what would you have said?

**Ash** – I ...**(9)**...**would have had to** say no.

**Brendan** – Ash, you ...**(10)**...**can't ask** me to cancel it. Most girls would love to be taken on holiday.

**Ash** – I'm not most girls.

1. <b>a)</b> неужели сделал <b>b)</b> не мог сделать <b>c)</b> просто не мог сделать	6 <b>a)</b> не должна верить <b>b)</b> невозможно поверить <b>c)</b> невероятно
2. <b>a)</b> не может быть, что поеду <b>b)</b> просто не могу поехать <b>c)</b> нельзя мне ехать	7. <b>a)</b> не может быть, что сделал <b>b)</b> неужели сделал <b>c)</b> не мог бы сделать
3. <b>a)</b> можешь <b>b)</b> можно <b>c)</b> необходимо	8. <b>a)</b> мог бы спросить <b>b)</b> следует спросить <b>c)</b> надо было спросить

4. a) должна b) следует c) вынуждена	9. a) мне бы пришлось сказать b) сказала бы нет c) необходимо сказать нет
5. a) очевидно b) должен c) возможно	10. a) не можешь просить b) просто не можешь просить c) нельзя просить

**203** Use the ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS for the Russian expressions in brackets.

1. When I fell behind, which rarely happened, (мне приходилось работать) \_\_\_\_\_ twelve hours on a Saturday. And if I wasn't behind, I (обычно работал) \_\_\_\_\_ only seven or eight hours on Saturday and maybe a few on Sunday.

2. Oliver knew that if (ему суждено быть) \_\_\_\_\_ successful, he (придется) \_\_\_\_\_ make connection with a minimum of two hundred delegate votes.

3. – (Никому не нужно знать) \_\_\_\_\_ about it, right?  
– But Margaret knows quite a bit.  
– And she (ни за что не будет говорить) \_\_\_\_\_.  
– How do you know?  
– I have her word. And I believe it.

4. – I don't know if I (смогу помочь) \_\_\_\_\_ you much.  
– (Хотя, возможно, могли бы) \_\_\_\_\_. All I need is enough to get to Miami and pay for a night in a hotel. And (мне понадобится переодеться) \_\_\_\_\_.

5. (Не могли бы вы оказать мне услугу?) \_\_\_\_\_ (Пожалуйста, позвоните домой) \_\_\_\_\_ for me and find out exactly what's going on there?

6. He is not the sort to take the blame, and (вам следует знать) \_\_\_\_\_ that.

7. Martin was in a wretched state when he heard that I'd taken the cheque, he (должно быть, чувствовал) \_\_\_\_\_ that there was nobody left he (мог положиться) \_\_\_\_\_, that I'd let him down. He (очевидно, размышлял) \_\_\_\_\_ over it day and night – he was that sort. (Он ни за что бы не позволил) \_\_\_\_\_ you see it, Olwen. Oh, what a fool I was. (Мне следовало пойти) \_\_\_\_\_ straight to Martin and (сказать) \_\_\_\_\_ him what Stanton had told me.

8. "I don't know if I have anything to wear. How dressed up is this event?" He shrugged. "Cocktail dress. Really, Ash, \_\_\_\_\_ (тебе незачем беспокоиться). Anything will do. Honestly." She sighed. Ash really didn't think she \_\_\_\_\_ (могла бы надеть) just anything to the K Club. People \_\_\_\_\_ (неприменно, будут одеты) all sorts of expensive dresses and \_\_\_\_\_ (она, конечно, будет выглядеть) completely out of place in her so-called glad rags. \_\_\_\_\_ (Ей следует купить) a new dress. (she thought)

**204** FILL IN the appropriate modal verbs or its equivalent. (Alternatives are possible)

1. We'll have a new student joining us next week, but for now it \_\_\_\_\_ be useful for him to see what we're doing.
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ have argued with the policeman but I felt I was right.
3. Why \_\_\_\_\_ Bill still be in her life at all, even by name?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ I take my umbrella? Is the weather going to change for the worse?
5. The bus was late. They \_\_\_\_\_ take a taxi.
6. She's got the face and the figure for that. She \_\_\_\_\_ have been a model.
7. It was an expensive kit. She \_\_\_\_\_ afford it.
8. You \_\_\_\_\_ stand up for yourself. Don't let anyone intimidate you.
9. He \_\_\_\_\_ have gone very far with his leg injured. We'll find him in an hour or so.
10. She \_\_\_\_\_ have been looking for that key of yours without waking me up!
11. \_\_\_\_\_ I help you in any way?' she asked as she sat down.
12. When I came, I found out that nobody spoke Finnish. So I \_\_\_\_\_ have learnt it. It had been a waste of time.
13. She \_\_\_\_\_ gone to University but she adored needlework
14. Our car broke down just as we were crossing the bridge and we \_\_\_\_\_ wait for help.
15. - \_\_\_\_\_ I send the message right now?  
- No, you \_\_\_\_\_. It \_\_\_\_\_ wait. You \_\_\_\_\_ send it in an hour.
16. Greg paints well and has a strong will-power. I'm sure one day he \_\_\_\_\_ make a great artist.
17. Bert \_\_\_\_\_ play a lot of Frisbee but he doesn't any more.
18. Robert hasn't come. He \_\_\_\_\_ not have received our message about the meeting.
19. Passengers on a tram \_\_\_\_\_ lean out of the windows.
20. You absolutely \_\_\_\_\_ check the tires before leaving.
21. She never got my letter. \_\_\_\_\_ I have written the wrong address?
22. She \_\_\_\_\_ be his daughter. They are absolutely alike.

**205** READ the two letters and FILL IN the proper modal verbs.

**Churchill to the King**

Sir,  
As Prime Minister and Minister of defense, I \_\_\_\_\_ to be allowed to go where I consider it necessary to the discharge of my duty, and I do not admit that the Cabinet have any right to put restrictions on my freedom of movement.  
I \_\_\_\_\_ earnestly ask Your Majesty that no principle \_\_\_\_\_ be laid down which inhibits my freedom of movement when I judge it necessary to acquaint myself with conditions in various theatres of war.  
Since Your Majesty does me the honour to be so much concerned about my personal safety on this occasion, I \_\_\_\_\_ defer to Your Majesty's wishes and indeed commands. It is a great comfort to me to know that they arise from Your Majesty's desire to continue me in your service.  
Your Majesty's humble and devoted Servant and Subject, Winston S.

## The King to Churchill

*My dear Winston,*

*I want to make one more appeal to you not to go to sea. Please consider my own position. I am a younger man than you, I am a sailor and as King I am the head of all three services. There is nothing I \_\_\_\_\_ like better than to go to sea but I have agreed to stay at home. Is it fair that you \_\_\_\_\_ do exactly what I \_\_\_\_\_ have liked to do myself?*

*You said yesterday afternoon that it would be a fine thing for King to lead the troops into battle, as in old days; if the King \_\_\_\_\_ do this, it does not seem to me to be right that his Prime Minister \_\_\_\_\_ take his place. Then there is your own position; you \_\_\_\_\_ see very little, you \_\_\_\_\_ run a considerable risk, you will be inaccessible at a critical time when vital decisions \_\_\_\_\_ have to be taken; and your presence on board is bound to be a very heavy additional responsibility to the Admiral and Captain.*

*I ask you most earnestly to consider the whole question again and not let your personal wishes, which I very well understand, lead you to depart from your own high standard of duty to the state.*

*Yours very sincerely, George VI*

### 206 CROSS OUT the unnecessary words. Two sentences are correct.

1. 'I know this is really unfair of me,' she said, 'but I'll have to have run.'
2. Perhaps the police must be looking for the stolen bike.
3. She could to have stopped on her way back to Dublin and visited Molly.
4. Mack, you don't should eat more fish than meat.
5. If there are more clients, I'll have to have someone else to help me.
6. But let me come with you. I can be carry some bags.
7. How dare you to afford such childish behaviour!
8. They shouldn't have tried to have cut all the talks.
9. It was a nice gesture, booking the holiday. But Dan shouldn't have tried to pressurize her. Ash disliked the feeling of pressure.
10. She was not to have read the new e-mails and she made another click.
11. I should to finish my report before I go on vacation.
12. When the removal workers arrive, they must have put the TV set on the chest of drawers. Don't let them leave it anywhere else. Otherwise I won't be able to watch it.

### 207 Change into INDIRECT SPEECH.

#### Section A

1. *Guillaume*: "Vianne, your chocolate shop looks wonderful. You must've been up all night doing this."
2. *Father Reynaud*: "The bishop should be informed. Perhaps he may be able to exercise the influence I don't possess."
3. *Father Reynaud* thought: "Only fear and respect for my habits prevents them from laughing aloud. Of course they dare not laugh at me at my face."



4. *Guillaume to Vianne*: "I've had this cat for nineteen years. I'd rather choke than get rid of her though there are some humans I could give up without a second thought."

5. *Vianne to Roux*: "Hello, little stranger. Do come in. You should've knocked. I didn't see you out there."

6. *Luc to Armande*, his grandmother: "I had to wait until my mother went out. She's at the hairdresser's now. She won't be back till six."

7. *Father Reynaud to Josephine*: "Madam Rocher may be your friend, Josephine, but she is a business woman, she has a shop to run, a child to care."

8. *Armande to Father Reynaud*: "You needn't waste any of your time. Everything seems to be going just fine without you."

9. *Armande to Luc*: "At your age you ought to be rebelling – growing your hair long, listening to rock music."

### Section B

1. – If only we could speak in private!

– No, I am staying here.

2. – We need to talk.

– Not in here. There's work to do. And I don't want to listen to what you have to say.

3. – What do you think?

– I think she might have been exaggerating.

4. – Are you eating something?

– No, *peré*. Eating? Why should I?

– I'm sure. I can hear you eating.

5. – And yet the Bible tells us quite clearly what we must do. Weeds and wheat cannot grow peacefully together. Any gardener could tell you the same.

– Don't talk to me. Why can't you see that you've already done enough?

6. – It's OK. I won't let him in.

– You may have to. But it's all right. He can't walk through the walls.

**208** Change the dialogue into INDIRECT SPEECH. Use the given verbs:

**advise**

**agree**

**confess**

**explain**

**protest**

**assure**

**add**

**complain**

**exclaim**

**remark**

**answer**

**admit**

**deny**

**hope**

**wonder**

*Josephine*: I hear that you walked out because of that business with the river people. Paul-Marie was furious. You should've heard the things he was saying.

*Vianne*: Fortunately, I don't have to listen to anything Paul-Marie has to say. Why should I be interested in him? Now you – I find *you* quite interesting. You are pretty. You could be beautiful.

*Josephine*: How can you know that? I hadn't said ...

*Vianne*: You didn't have to.

*Josephine*: You must think I'm stupid to have stayed with him all these years.

*Vianne*: No, I don't.

*Josephine:* I'm stupid and weak. I can't remember a time I've ever loved him.  
 I should've left him. But when I think of actually leaving him...  
 No, it's no use. This is how it has to be. Can't you see?  
*Vianne:* But things can be better. Paul-Marie doesn't rule the world.  
*Josephine:* He might as well.  
*Vianne:* No.

**209** Fill in the blanks with the modal verbs and report the dialogue.

Mr. Jones 1 and Mr. Jones 2 are walking up and down nervously. Mr. Smith is sitting calmly.

*Mr. Jones 1:* Is this your first?

*Mr. Jones 2:* Yes, it is. How about you?

*Mr. Jones 1:* Yes, me too and I (не могу не) **1**..... worrying.

*Mr. Smith:* Your first! Ha! Ha! This is my tenth, and I (должен) **2**..... say you (незачем) **3**..... get excited.

*Mr. Jones 1:* Do you want a boy or a girl?

*Mr. Jones 2:* I don't mind but I hate all this waiting.

*Mr. Smith:* Cheer up! The first is always the worst. (Пожалуйста) **4**..... you sit down? Both of you?

(The two Mr. Jones sit down. The Nurse comes in.)

*Nurse:* Mr. Jones?

*Mr. Jones 1 and Mr. Jones 2:* Yes. (They both stand up at the same time.)

*Nurse:* Now, which one is Mr. Jones?

*Mr. Jones 1 and Mr. Jones 2:* I am.

*Mr. Jones 1:* You (не можете) **5**..... be Mr. Jones. I am.

*Mr. Jones 2:* I am Mr. Jones.

*Nurse:* Well, anyway Mrs. Jones has had quins -five babies.

*Mr. Smith:* Good heavens! Five!

*Mr. Jones 1:* It (не может) **6**..... be my wife. It (должно быть) **7**..... be yours.

*Mr. Jones 2:* It (не может) **8**..... be mine. It (должно быть) **9**..... be yours.

*Nurse:* Wait a moment. I (должна) **10**..... go and check with the doctor.

(She goes out.)

*Mr. Smith:* Ha! Ha! Rather you than me.

*Mr. Jones 1:* I hope it's not me.

*Mr. Jones 2:* It (должно быть) **11**..... be a mistake.

*Mr. Smith:* I (полагаю)...**12**... say, someone here is going to be very busy.

(The Nurse comes back.)

*Nurse:* I'm terribly sorry, I've made a mistake. It isn't Mrs. Jones but Mrs. Smith who has had quins.

*Mr. Smith:* Oh, no! (Неужели) **13**..... it be true? What (мне придется) **14** ... ..... do with fourteen children?

<p>1. – Мы обслуживаем компанию Четман в понедельник, да? – Да, их только восемь. – Я знаю. И я смогу справиться одна, я знаю, что я непременно справлюсь. Я только, может быть, окажусь не такой быстрой, и все. – Дайте мне знать завтра. Если действительно возникнет проблема, я всегда могла бы попросить Маргарет.</p> <p>2. – Давно хотела задать вам этот вопрос, но случая не было или смелости не хватало. Теперь все равно, пожалуй, могу. Роберт... это вы взяли деньги? – Конечно, нет. Вы, видно, с ума сошли, Олуэн (Olwen). Неужели вы думаете, я бы возложил вину на беднягу Мартина, даже если бы взял их? Это Мартин их взял. Мы все это знаем.</p> <p>3. – Ах, какая я была дура все это время. – Ничего не понимаю. Должны же вы были знать, что деньги взял Мартин. Не могли вы все это время думать, что их взял я. – А я думала. Не просто думала, эта мысль была пыткой... – Но почему, почему? О черт, что за бессмыслица. Допустим, я мог бы взять эти деньги – ...полагаю, при каких-то обстоятельствах все мы на такое способны... но ни за что на свете я не дал бы осудить за собственную вину кого-то другого ... да еще Мартина! Как же вы могли считать меня способным на такую подлость! Я думал, вы мне друг, Олуэн...</p>	<p>1. – We are doing Chatman's on Monday, aren't we? – Yes, there are only eight of them. – I know. And I'll be able to manage, I know I will. I might just be a little slow, that's all. – Let me know tomorrow. If it's a real problem I could always get Margaret to do it.</p> <p>2. – I've been wanting to ask you that question for some time but I've never had the chance or never dared. Now I don't care. It might as well come out. Robert – did you take that money? – Of course not. You must be crazy, Olwen. Can you think I'd have blamed Martin for it even if I had taken it? But Martin took it, of course. We all know that.</p> <p>3. – Oh, what a fool I've been. – I don't understand. Surely you must have known that Martin took it. You can't have been thinking all this time that I did it. – Yes, I have. And I've not been thinking it – I've been torturing myself with it. – But why, why? Damn it all – it doesn't make sense. I might have taken the money – I suppose we're all capable of that, under circumstances – but never on earth could I have let somebody else – and especially Martin – take the blame for it. How could you think me capable of such a thing! I thought you were a friend of mine, Olwen – one of my best and oldest friends.</p>
--	--

**211** Translate into English.

**a)**

1. Действительно, пора было подстригаться, но она не могла себе этого позволить. Ей опять придется обратиться к Мэгги. А что если бы она не бросила работу? Сейчас она могла бы позволить себе и стрижку у хорошего парикмахера, и машину, и экзотический отпуск.
2. Это было такое платье, которое ей следовало иметь, когда она, как старый друг Дэна, ходила с ним в клуб 'К'. Конечно, такую одежду невозможно носить каждый день, но ей все равно хотелось её иметь. Должно быть, у них нет моего размера, решила она и вышла из магазина.
3. Все еще можно было сказать, что она, наверное, была хорошенькой в молодости.
4. Она вынуждена была признать, что это было удивительно полезное ювелирное украшение.
5. «У Корделии, возможно, сотни платьев, но не у меня. Я безнадежна в одежде». «Не может быть. У женщин это от рождения», – возразила Тина.
6. Она поклялась, что не позволит себе расплнеть, даже когда у нее появится первый ребенок.
7. «Я дал тебе лучшего продюсера и оператора. У тебя не должно быть никаких проблем». Дэну суждено было вспомнить эти оптимистические слова позже.
8. Я вдруг вспомнила, что мы договаривались с Джоном встретиться сегодня.
9. Когда я был ребенком, я мог плавать в нашем озере. Я даже смог переплыть его. Но теперь оно слишком загрязнено.
10. Должно быть, связь была плохая, потому, что Джеф смог дозвониться до своей семьи только с почты.
11. Анна хороший бухгалтер, и вероятно, в следующем месяце она получит повышение в зарплате, что значительно облегчит её жизнь с тремя детьми на руках.
12. Можно еще раз взглянуть на ваши снимки? Вероятно, вы принимаете меня за кого-то другого.

**b)**

1. Мы должны были прибыть раньше, но нас задержали на дороге.
2. Вы не должны спрашивать её о возрасте. Она может почувствовать себя неловко.
3. В случае если мы опоздаем, вы можете начать без нас.
4. Представить себе не могу, чего бы он так опаздывал.
5. Незачем было читать книгу до конца. Достаточно было прочитать первые пять глав.
6. Если бы не плохая погода, они бы уже прилетели. Самолет должен был приземлиться в 5 часов.

7. – Я просто должна купить новый компьютер. Мне следовало это сделать в прошлом году. Не мог бы ты одолжить мне денег?

– Боюсь, что нет. С трудом сам могу жить на зарплату.

8. – Осторожно, ты чуть не упала. Не спеши.

– Не могу не спешить. Я должна быть дома в 12. Родители могут подумать, что что-то случилось.

9. – Что же теперь будет со мной? – Тебе незачем беспокоиться. Тебя должен оперировать доктор Браун.

10. – Куда это я могла положить ручку?

– Вот она. Ты, наверное, сидела вчера за моим столом и оставила ее там. Но тебе придется взять другую. Эта никак не пишет

11. – Мне читать вопросы?

– Нет, незачем. Читайте текст, пожалуйста.

– Какое было последнее предложение?

– Вам следовало следить за чтением

12. – Я не видела Шефилдов с мая. Пора бы им вернуться. Где же они могут быть?

– Они, очевидно, приехали из лагеря отдыха и сейчас, возможно, в городе. Ты можешь позвонить им, если захочешь.

**с)**

Насколько я знаю, усыновление детей не может быть легким делом. И при этом не имеет значения, сколько денег у вас может быть на счету или кто вы можете быть по профессии – всемирно известная звезда или всего лишь клерк в банке. Подход должен оставаться неизменным.

Можете ли вы дать любовь ребенку, у которого, возможно, нет никакой надежды, что его когда-нибудь полюбят? Можете ли вы дать ему чувство защищенности, которое это существо, должно быть, никогда не испытывало? Если да, то этот поступок и должен быть самым достойным награды.

**212**  **Work with the partner. Read the information and the opinions, choose the one you agree with and comment on it. Use modal verbs.**

**FACT:** McDonald's and other fast-food restaurants have become so popular that some people do eat this type of diet constantly.


**Opinion 1.** If McDonald's menus are that good for you, surely you should eat there – breakfast, lunch and dinner – for any number of days, with no side effect.

**Opinion 2.** One thing McDonald's cannot dispute is the shocking impact that the food has on the person's body and psyche. You can't remember things, you can't pay attention and you are disengaged. Eating at McDonald's can be a way to high blood pressure, elevated cholesterol, liver disease and diabetes.


**Opinion 3.** You should only eat fast food once a month.

- 213** a) MATCH the proverbs in column A and their synonyms in column B.  
 b) Choose the one you like best, explain its meaning. Use modal verbs.

A	B
1. As a man sows, so <b>shall</b> he reap. 2. What <b>will</b> be, will be. 3. Men <b>must</b> do as they may, not as they would. 4. Old birds <b>are not to</b> be caught with chaff. 5. What <b>can't</b> be cured must be endured. 6. Sport as you <b>may</b> while master's away. 7. Beggars <b>cannot</b> be chooses. 8. Deep <b>will</b> call to deep. 9. He that <b>will</b> thrive <b>must</b> rise at five. 10. I <b>will</b> not change a cottage in possession for a kingdom in reversion. 11. A fool <b>may</b> ask more questions than a clever man can answer.	A. It's no use crying over spilt milk. B. Don't look a gifted horse into the mouth. C. No flying from fate. D. When the cat is away, mice will play. E. You have made your bed and you must lie on it. F. Birds of a feather flock together. G. Experience is the mother of wisdom. H. A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush. J. Cut your coat according to your cloth. K. Curiosity kills the cat. L. The early bird catches the worm.

- 214**  Read the information: (a) give at least 3 possible suppositions to identify the cause of the blaze; (b) provide at least 3 recommendations that such an event may never be allowed to happen again. Use modal verbs.

*There was a fire in the middle of the night at a private nursing home full of people. Ten people died, six were taken to hospital. The fire spread three or four meters either side of the cupboard on the upper floor.*

- 215**  Imagine that New Year holiday is coming near. WRITE sentences about what you *should do*, *must do*, *have to do*, *don't have to do*. Give reasons for each sentence.

---



---



---



---




---

- 216**  Work with the partner. READ the statement, ANSWER the questions, give reasons. Use modal verbs.

Nowadays much is being said about the harmful effect of graffiti "art". Graffiti vandalism costs millions.  
 (Graffiti are ,drawings, words scratched on a hard surface, especially a wall.)



1. Do graffiti painters have respect for people and their property?
2. Can graffiti paintings be called works of art?
3. Should graffiti painters be arrested at the scene of the crime?
4. Should they have to pay large fines?
5. Should they be sentenced to long terms in prison/in labour camps?
6. Should they be involved in decorating streets and buildings?
7. What else should be done to prevent acts of vandalism?
8. Can leaving chewing gum in the streets and on pieces of furniture also be called vandalism?

**217**  **Work with the partner. READ the opinions about a woman's handbag which is considered to be today's key accessory of every woman. EXPRESS your attitude, use modal verbs.**

**Opinion 1.** The handbag can label you cool, rich, sexy, original, well-travelled or a raging snob. It's the place where you store your whole life.



**Opinion 2.** These days handbags don't speak volumes, they carry volumes. They are not really handbags. For modern woman has to think of every eventuality. Apart from credit cards, cash, keys, make up, a notebook, pen, mobile phone, hairbrush, Nurofen Plus, a book to read in case she gets bored, it may also jam in a calculator, a measuring tape, deodorant, batteries, contact lenses, sunglasses and moisturizer.

**Opinion 3.** Women with no bag look artlessly and carelessly ready for anything.

**Opinion 4.** Elisabeth II, the Queen of Great Britain, gives everybody an intriguing peek at the secret world of her handbag. She carries absolutely nothing in her handbag, except what seems to be either an empty purse or spectacle case. But everybody knows that she uses it to send silent messages to her staff. If it's in her left hand, she is happy; if not – you'd better watch out, she is bored of the person she is talking to and needs to be rescued.

**218** READ the story.

- a) **FILL IN** the modal verbs.  
b) **WRITE** as many sentences as you can to express criticism.

### THE WINDOW

There were once two men, both seriously ill, in the small room of a great hospital. Quite a small room, it had one window looking out on the world. One of them, as a part of his treatment, was allowed to sit up in bed for an hour in the afternoon. His bed was next to the window. But the other man (должен был) \_\_\_\_\_ spend all his time flat on his back.

Every afternoon when the man next to the window was propped up for an hour, he (имел обыкновение) \_\_\_\_\_ pass the time by describing what he (мог) \_\_\_\_\_ see outside. The window (очевидно) \_\_\_\_\_ overlooked a park where there was a lake. There were ducks and swans in the lake, and children came to throw them bread and sail model boats. Young lovers walked hand in hand beneath the trees, and there were flowers and stretches of grass, games of softball.

The man on his back (обычно слушал) \_\_\_\_\_ to the other man describe all of this, enjoying every minute. He heard how a child nearly fell into the lake, and how beautiful the girls were in their summer dresses. His friend's description (должно быть) \_\_\_\_\_ made him feel he (может) \_\_\_\_\_ almost see what was happening outside.

Then one afternoon the thought struck him: Why (с какой стати) \_\_\_\_\_ the man next to the window have all this pleasure of seeing what was going on? Why (отчего бы) \_\_\_\_\_ he get the chance? He felt ashamed, but the more he tried not to think like that, the worse he wanted a change. He'd do anything! One night as he stared at the ceiling, the other man suddenly woke up, coughing and choking. He (скорее всего) \_\_\_\_\_ having one of his attacks. The man (мог бы) \_\_\_\_\_ called the nurse but he (не желал) \_\_\_\_\_ move – even when the sounds of the other man's breathing stopped. In the morning, the nurse found the other man dead, and quietly took his body away.

As soon as it seemed decent, the man asked if he (можно ли) \_\_\_\_\_ be switched to the window. So they moved him and made him quite comfortable. The minute they left, he propped himself up on the elbow, painfully and laboriously, and looked out of the window.

He faced a blank wall.

(Author unknown, submitted by Ronald Dahlsten and Harriette Lindsey.)

**219** Look at the pictures, name the people's jobs. **WRITE** three things about what people in these jobs:

- a) **must** do;  
b) **what they mustn't** do;  
c) **what they have to** do every day;  
d) **what they don't have to** do but would like to do if possible.






---



---



---



---



---



---

**220** a) COMPLETE the dialogue with the phrases from the box. Use each phrase only once.

b) Try to EXPLAIN what might have happened.

may have given	could they have got
should be	were able to find
will go	shall we have to do
can't have	could
needn't have worried	

*Official:* 1 \_\_\_\_\_ I have your tickets please?

*Mr. Fletcher:* Yes, I've got them here in my bag. Oh, I haven't. I  
2 \_\_\_\_\_ them to you, dear.

*Mrs. Fletcher:* No, you 3 \_\_\_\_\_. You gave me your wallet to hold when you were locking the front door.

*Mr. Fletcher:* What 4 \_\_\_\_\_, then?

Mrs. Fletcher: Have you heard that announcement? They are calling a Mr. Fletcher. That 5\_\_\_\_\_ you.

Mr. Fletcher: So, I 6\_\_\_\_\_ and find out then.  
(Some minutes later) Phew! It was the tickets.


Mrs. Fletcher: What a relief! We 7\_\_\_\_\_.

Mr. Fletcher: And guess where they 8\_\_\_\_\_ them?

Mrs. Fletcher: Aren't you going to tell me?

Mr. Fletcher: In the lady's.

Mrs. Fletcher: In the what? How on earth 9\_\_\_\_\_ there?

**221**  **Work with the partner. READ some facts about bullying and answer the questions. Express your attitude, use modal verbs.**

### BULLING



Bullying is a global problem. Have you ever had to deal with a bully? Most of us must have had at one time or another. It may have been at school or in the work place, or it may even have occurred right at home – where such abuse of power is played out with alarming frequency these days. Bullies and their victims may be of either gender and from any walk of life. Bullying has been called “*a willful, conscious desire to hurt another and put him/her under stress.*” The stress is created not only by what actually happens but also by fear of what might happen.

Tactics might include teasing, constant criticism, insults, gossip and unreasonable demands. There could be *physical bullies*: these are easy to identify. They act out their anger by hitting or by damaging their victim's property. There can also be *relationship bullies* who spread nasty rumours about their target. *Verbal bullies* use words to hurt and humiliate their target. *Reactive bullies* are victims of bullying who turn into bullies themselves.

(Abridged from *School English*)

1. What can give rise to such unacceptable behaviour? (*parents are cold and uninvolved, teach their children to use rage and violence to handle problems, lack of supervision, no place to turn, etc.*)
2. What can bullies get? (*power, status, attention, anything else*)
3. Why don't victims report the problem?
4. Can teachers detect and stop bullying accidents at school?
5. What can the possible consequences of bullying be to the victim, to the society? (*a permanent state of anxiety and insecurity, violence, suicide, etc.*)
6. Can bullying have bad effects on bullies themselves?
7. Can anything be done to eliminate the problem of bullying?

Read the passage about **ITCHING** and find and **CORRECT** ten mistakes in the use of the modal verbs and their equivalents.

### ITCHING



One must think that with all the scientific progress that has been made in the last century, researchers would be allowed by now to answer this very simple question: Why do we itch? Unfortunately, scientists can't answer this question with any certainty. They simply don't know.

There are some clear cases involving itching. If a patient goes to his doctor and complains of terrible itching and the doctor finds hives or some other kind of rash, the doctor might say that the patient must eat something that didn't agree with him – or that he might be stung by some insect. This kind of case can be easily diagnosed. Most itching, however, does not have obvious causes.

Here's what scientists do know. Right under the surface of the skin there are sensory receptors that register physical stimuli and carry messages to the brain. These receptors detect pain and let the brain know about it. If there's a high level of physical stimulation to the body, this stimulation might be reported it to the brain as pain. If the level of physical stimulation is low, the sensors might have reported it as itchiness.

There has been a lot of speculation about the function of itching. Some researchers theorize that the function of itching may to warn the body that it will have to have a painful experience. Others theorize that early humans might developed itching as a way of knowing that they needed to take vermin and insects out of their hair. Still others believe that itching could a symptom of serious diseases such as diabetes and Hodgkin's disease.

One of the most interesting aspects of itching is that it may have be less tolerable than pain. Research has shown, in fact, that most people tolerate pain better than itching. Many will allow their skin to be painfully broken just so they can get rid of an itch.

(From David Feldman, Imponderable Books, *How Do Astronauts Scratch an Itch, and other books*)

**TEST YOURSELF: make the right choice.**

- A. – Martin didn't have that cigarette box in the morning.  
 B. – I suppose it.....1..... by the afternoon post then.  
 A. – It ....2..... in the afternoon. You took it to Martin yourself. You did, didn't you?  
 B. – Well, if you .....3....., I did.  
 A. – In this case you.....4..... Martin later than anybody, only a few hours before he shot himself.  
 B. – I did. I saw him between tea and dinner.

A. – Why didn't you come forward at the inquest? You....5... evidence.

B. – But why .....6.....? What good .... 7 .... it have done? It was bad enough that Gordon .....8..... it. If my evidence .....9..... Martin, I'd have given it. But it .....10..... anybody.

1. **A.** *must have come*                      **B.** *must come*                      **C.** *will probably come*

2. **A.** *couldn't have delivered*   **B.** *couldn't deliver*                      **C.** *couldn't have been delivered*

3. **A.** *have know*                      **B.** *must know*                      **C.** *may know*

4. **A.** *must see*                      **B.** *must have seen*                      **C.** *must be seen*

5. **A.** *must have given*                      **B.** *might give*                      **C.** *could have given*

6. **A.** *should I have*                      **B.** *could I have*                      **C.** *must I have*

7. **A.** *must*                      **B.** *could*                      **C.** *should*

8. **A.** *has to do*                      **B.** *had had to do*                      **C.** *had to do*

9. **A.** *can have helped*                      **B.** *could have helped*                      **C.** *could help*

10. **A.** *couldn't help*                      **B.** *can't have helped*                      **C.** *might not help*

# REVISION

## OBLIQUE MOODS AND MODAL VERBS

224

Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses in the correct form.

1. – Would you mind if I \_\_\_\_\_ (smoke)?  
– I'd really rather you \_\_\_\_\_ (not do). It could \_\_\_\_\_ (affect) my throat.
2. – What kind of cell phone does your teacher have?  
– That might \_\_\_\_\_ (be) Nokia  
– If I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) her, I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) an iPhone.
3. – Bob has a test tomorrow that he needs \_\_\_\_\_ (study) for. He shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV now.  
– But for Julia Roberts starring in it, he \_\_\_\_\_ (not do) it.
4. – How much do you weigh, I wonder?  
– I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ (not tell) you. But I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ (weigh) less.
5. You should \_\_\_\_\_ (apply) for a summer job. I wish you \_\_\_\_\_ (do) it. Now it's too late.
6. She didn't look as if she \_\_\_\_\_ (be) glad that I turned out to be a policeman.
7. Which key do I need \_\_\_\_\_ (unlock) the door?
8. We can \_\_\_\_\_ (give) you a lift. – Oh, that would \_\_\_\_\_ (be) great. Thank you.
9. – My neighbours are having a loud party. I can hardly \_\_\_\_\_ (fall) asleep.  
– You must \_\_\_\_\_ (be) very angry with them. I wish you \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in a cottage.
10. I could \_\_\_\_\_ (pass) my driving test, but I didn't take it.

225

Complete the sentences with modal verbs. More than one modal verb is possible.

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ have married her.
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ buy a newspaper. I want to know the latest news.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ buy a newspaper. My father asked me to get one.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ they have divorced? Is it possible after so many years?
5. Mr Jones \_\_\_\_\_ be staying in. There's a "Do not disturb" on the door.
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ have bought the tickets beforehand. It's a pity you didn't do it.
7. – It's a lovely day. \_\_\_\_\_ we go for a walk?  
– I'd like to. But I \_\_\_\_\_ drive my boss to the airport in an hour.
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ have watered the vegetable garden. It's going to rain.
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ you to tell him all the truth. I don't think I would have the courage to do it either.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ I turn on the radio? Would you like to listen to the latest news?
11. – Mrs Spark, a seventy-year-old woman, is going to do a parachute jump. – She \_\_\_\_\_ be mad. She \_\_\_\_\_ be serious. – But it's fun. You \_\_\_\_\_ try it yourself. You \_\_\_\_\_ enjoy it.

12. \_\_\_\_\_ you help me, please? The window in our compartment \_\_\_\_\_ open.
13. Let's ask Susan. She says she is acquainted with him. She \_\_\_\_\_ know his address.
14. Let's ask Susan. She is his girlfriend. She \_\_\_\_\_ know his address.
15. Flight attendant to passenger: You \_\_\_\_\_ only carry on two pieces of luggage.

**226** Complete the sentences by using Modal Verbs or forms of Oblique Moods with the expressions in the list or your own words.

do for	be more	be at a meeting	be here	dial
be too small	miss	be in the employee lounge	worry	
fit Jimmy	be alive		be late	
	visit them			

1. – Hello?  
 – Hello. May I speak to Ron?  
 – I'm sorry. You \_\_\_\_\_ the wrong number. There's no one here by that name.
2. – Where is Ms Adams? She is not in the office.  
 – Let me see. It's Tuesday today. So she \_\_\_\_\_, or she \_\_\_\_\_.
3. – Why can't I speak with Jackie? It's high time she \_\_\_\_\_. – You \_\_\_\_\_. She \_\_\_\_\_. She never comes to work on time.



4. – This winter jacket is in good shape, but Brian has outgrown it. Do you think it \_\_\_\_\_ one \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ your \_\_\_\_\_ sons?  
 – Well, it \_\_\_\_\_ for Danny, but it \_\_\_\_\_.
5. – How long has it been since you last saw your family?  
 – It \_\_\_\_\_ than a year. – You \_\_\_\_\_ very much. If my parents \_\_\_\_\_, I \_\_\_\_\_ more often.

**227** Choose the best completions for the conversations.

1	– When a wild animal is rejected from its pack, it's an angry animal. It ____ join the other pack so it attacks anything and is extremely dangerous. It ____ disturbed. People can do nothing to help it. Anyone who ____ to approach it is almost certainly doomed. – Sounds horrible. I suppose no one would ____ try to catch these wild animals.	<i>cannot, shouldn't, mustn't</i> <i>doesn't have to be, shouldn't have been, shouldn't be</i> <i>need, ought, dares</i> <i>dare to, be to, have to</i>
---	---	--

<p>2 - Sorry, I _____ join you. I _____ go to the airport. My sister's plane _____ arrive at four o'clock this afternoon. - _____ go with you? I _____ stay in the car while you are in the airport. That's why you won't _____ pay for parking.</p>	<p><i>can't, may not, shouldn't need, would, have to is to, has to, must Shall I, Must I, Do I have to may, should, can need, have to, ought to</i></p>
<p>3 You know, I'm feeling pretty down. Last week Diana, my girlfriend, left me right after I got fired. She _____ I wasn't going to be a good provider. I admit I _____ up on time every day, and I didn't. If I _____ late for work a lot,  I _____ my job.  I _____ crazy to be so lazy on that job at  the software company. Now I wish I _____ so careless.</p>	<p><i>must have decided, might conclude, should have thought should have shown, wouldn't have shown, must have shown hadn't been, weren't, wouldn't be didn't loose, wouldn't have lost, wouldn't loose may have been, would have been, must have been hadn't been, wouldn't have been, shouldn't have been</i></p>

**228** Translate into English. 3 models

**I**

1. - Алекс получил письмо из Америки.  
- Думаю, ты ошибаешься. **Не может быть.** Потому что **если бы** он его получил, он бы уже прибежал ко мне похвастаться им.
2. - Говорят, он богат.  
- Не может быть. Если бы он был богат, он бы не взял денег у меня в долг вчера.
3. - Неужели Кейси собирается устроить вечеринку?  
- Не может быть. Если бы это было так, я бы уже получила приглашение.
4. - Неужели Джулия болтает по телефону со своим дружкой?  
- Нет, не может быть. Если бы это был он, она бы говорила с ним в своей комнате.

**II**

1. - **Неужели** я потеряла кошелек?  
- Не думаю. **Не может быть. Возможно,** ты оставила его дома.
2. - Неужели она прочитала все эти книги?  
- Не может быть. Она, **скорей всего,** только просмотрела их.
3. - Неужели та женщина его жена? - Не думаю. Она, возможно, просто его секретарша.





4. – Oh, if I \_\_\_\_\_ to a warm, sunny place in September! Any  
**went/had gone/ go**  
suggestions?

– You \_\_\_\_\_ go to Hawaii or Mexico.  
**should go/could have gone/are to**

But I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ to the Caucasus.  
**go/went/to go**

5. – It looks like rain. You \_\_\_\_\_ to shut the windows.  
**may/should/ought**

– Why \_\_\_\_\_? Let Peter \_\_\_\_\_ it  
**should I/have I to/must I** **can do/ to do/ do**

**231** Correct errors if any.

**a)**

1. Could I speak to the manager, please?
2. May you please hold it for me?
3. This course is optional. You mustn't take it but you can if you want to.
4. That couldn't be Joe, but I'm not quite sure.
5. When I was young I could swim a mile.
6. The letter must not have been delivered to the right address.
7. There's no school tomorrow. You shouldn't go to bed early tonight.
8. Right now I can attend English courses during the day. In three years I can't attend day classes. I'll have to find a full-time job.
9. The book is much spoken of. It should be interesting.
10. – Do you remember that we were to have met at 11 o'clock? – You needn't have reminded me of it. I know the time of the appointment.

**b)**

1. If you have a car, you could have traveled around the United States.
2. I need to reschedule. I won't to be able to see you at the time we scheduled for tomorrow.
3. The winner of the race hasn't been announced yet, but it's time it had.
4. Many strange things happened yesterday. I wish they hadn't.
5. May you please help me with the bicycle?
6. We were to have brought our books to class every day.
7. You needn't have climbed the apple tree. There were quite a lot of apples lying on the ground.
8. When I was a child, I could climb to the roof and saw all other houses.
9. You must not have heard what he said. He just wanted you to step aside.
10. A film director must has control over every aspect of a movie.
11. In the United States, elementary education is compulsory. All children should to attend six years of elementary school.
12. If you weren't speeding, you wouldn't go through a red light at the corner of Fifth Avenue and Main Street.
13. I dare you stay alone in a cemetery at night.

**232** Translate into English. Focus on Modal Verbs.

1. Тебе, вероятно, придется полететь вечерним рейсом на конференцию. Тогда ты, вероятно, не опоздаешь.
2. Им пришлось сменить униформу, да?
3. Мне не пришлось объяснять, в чем дело.
4. Осторожно. Вы чуть не упали.
5. – Как ты думаешь, почему он не смог сдать экзамен? – Наверное, он пропустил много занятий.
6. Завтра праздник, и нам не нужно идти в институт.
7. Незачем было показывать ей твой новый телефон. Теперь она хочет такой же.
8. Не надо будить Синди. Она поздно легла.
9. Вам не надо дочитывать книгу к четвергу. Я могу подождать до понедельника.
10. Я должна была быть в «Икее» час назад. Родители могут подумать, что со мной что-то случилось. Надо поспешить.
11. Вчера вечером я видела его жену. Ее можно было принять за англичанку.
12. Можно мне пойти и узнать, сделал ли Крис работу? Он должен был закончить её вчера.
13. Ты могла бы мне сказать, что опаздываешь.
14. Она не могла не заплакать.
15. Вряд ли они добрались до берега. В тот день был сильный шторм.
16. Возможно, уже холодно в детской. Мне закрыть там окно?
17. Машина никак не останавливается.

**233** Translate into English. Focus on Modal Verbs in situations.

1. – Тебе лучше остаться дома.  
– Чего ради мне оставаться дома? Я вполне здоров. И пора бы мне уже начать тренировки.
2. – Нет, доктор Бойли не может встретиться с Вами. Она делает обход. (to make one's rounds).  
– Неужели она его еще не закончила?  
– Нет. Она сказала, что, скорее всего, будет занята час или два. Так что она сможет поговорить с Вами только после обеда.
3. – Неужели Долли пробыла на Адриатическом море все лето?  
– Что ты сказала?  
– Я сказала, что не может быть, что она пробыла там так долго. Я видела ее вчера, и она выглядела, будто никогда не видела солнца.
4. Зря я вчера поливала грядки (vegetable beds). Утром сегодня прошел дождь.
5. Мне не пришлось сегодня поливать грядки. Утром прошел дождь.
6. – Почему Смиты еще не приехали?

- Они, должно быть, опоздали на поезд или, может, передумали.
- 7. – Где же это Марк мог прочитать эту статью?  
– По всей видимости, он нашел ее в Интернете.
- 8. – Я собираюсь посмотреть новый фильм уже неделю. Но боюсь, что не смогу достать билеты.  
– Не беспокойся. Я купила два билета. Мы можем пойти вместе. Ты должна быть у входа в воскресенье в 4.45.
- 9. Подруга должна была быть у входа в кинотеатр в 4.45, но не пришла. Неужели она забыла?
- 10. – Мне вызвать врача?  
– Нет, незачем. Мне гораздо лучше.  
– Тебе следовало надеть плащ вчера. Жаль, что я не настояла на этом.
- 11. – Когда я приехал, Терри выглядел удивленным.  
– Должно быть, он не ожидал тебя увидеть. Неужели ты не позвонил заранее?  
– К сожалению, нет.

**234** Translate into English. Focus on Modal Verbs and Prepositions.

1. Я понимаю, что Вы, вероятно, удивлены, увидев нас здесь. Возможно, мне следует объяснить, что здесь происходит.
2. Забор, скорей всего, упал во время шторма. К счастью, я смог починить его.
3. У Эдварда не было наличных денег, и ему пришлось идти в банк.
4. – Он был вынужден купить билет туда и обратно, да? – Нет.
5. Не надо заканчивать доклад сегодня, если слишком устала от него. Последний срок завтра в полдень.
6. Я должна включить отопление. Мне действительно холодно.
7. –Чего ради мне идти спать? Ведь еще не поздно. – Должно быть, ты не осознаешь, сколько времени сейчас. Тебе придется прекратить играть и идти мыться.
8. Незачем это было печатать, записка от руки вполне бы подошла.
9. Ну, вот опять сбой!(failure) Этому суждено было случиться. Я не владею компьютером достаточно хорошо.
10. Он сказал, что должен прийти на работу в понедельник.
11. Джек сказал, что дети, вероятно, спят, а его жена, возможно, на кухне.
12. Я – доктор всю свою жизнь (all my life running), и всю свою жизнь вынужден работать, не покладая рук (to work indefatigably).
13. Я не вижу причины, почему я не должен жениться на Рут (Ruth).
14. – Нож тупой, его надо наточить. – Неужели тупой? Я уже точил его.
15. Туристы должны были выйти в 3 часа, но задержались из-за сильного дождя.
16. Ты должен был навестить их. Ты ведь знаешь, что твои родители больны.

**235** Translate into English. Focus on Modal Verbs and Oblique Moods.

1. Я должна была передать Бартону отцовские часы, но он не пришел. Жаль.
2. Вы могли бы предупредить его заранее, что он должен был прийти в шесть. Ведь не трудно было бы это сделать.
3. Не может быть, что они не знают о визите президента компании. Иначе бы они не суетились весь день.
4. – Должно быть, они поженятся. – Откуда мне знать? Но я бы предпочла, чтобы они сначала закончили университет.
5. Вы непременно должны навестить нас, когда будете в Сочи. И случись вам оказаться летом, мы поведем вас в дендрарий.
6. – Жаль, что тебе пришлось уйти с вечеринки. Мы могли бы отлично провести время. – Если бы не звонок, я бы остался.
7. – И где же это наши девочки могут быть? Пора бы им прийти. Неужели они забыли о встрече? – Они, возможно, придут через несколько минут. Вероятно, опоздали на автобус.
8. Я, пожалуй, смогу помочь тебе. Но тебе придется подождать немного.
9. Вам незачем было приходить вчера. Мы могли бы закончить фильм сами.
10. Вам незачем было ее будить. Она поздно легла спать.
11. – Вам незачем печатать это к четвергу. Я могу подождать до воскресенья. – Ах, если бы все были такими доброжелательными!
12. Земля сырая. Вероятно, был дождь. На твоём месте я бы взяла зонтик на случай, если опять пойдет дождь.
13. Он увидел фигуру мужчины впереди и смог остановить машину вовремя.
14. – Не могли бы Вы помочь мне? Окно никак не открывается. – Жаль, но не могу. Должно быть, повредил руку, когда садился в поезд. Она никак не поднимается.
15. Прежде, чем войти в дом, я должна предупредить вас о собаке. Она может быть очень агрессивной иногда.
16. Грабители могут вернуться, так что я предлагаю сменить замок.

**236** Translate into English. Focus on Modal Verbs, Oblique Moods, Tenses and Prepositions.

1. Я не знал, кому суждено было стать моими попутчиками на борту корабля, но я не был особо обеспокоен по этому поводу.
2. – Я так несчастна. Напрасно я вышла замуж за Билла.  
– За Билла, в которого влюбилась с первого взгляда?  
– Да. Но теперь я полностью осознаю свою ошибку. Я его не люблю, и никогда не любила.
3. Пора бы собранию начаться. Интересно, кто должен делать доклад? Сможет ли он выступить в поддержку нашего предложения?
4. Жаль, что тебе пришлось уехать из Ленинграда в июне. Ты могла бы увидеть наши белые ночи и, наверное, была бы поражена ими.

5. – Грег и Ада бывало, останавливались в “Хилтон” отеле.  
– Тогда нам следует направиться туда немедленно. Мы можем добраться туда быстро на моей машине. Возможно, мы сможем найти их там и предупредить их об опасности.

6. Извините за то, что я накричала на вас вчера. Это, должно быть, было грубо по отношению к вам. Вы, возможно, взяли кошелек случайно потому, что мой кошелек похож на ваш. Мне не следовало было обвинять вас в краже. Стив был против этого, но я и слушать не желала. Жаль, что я так сделала.

7. Мое решение принять приглашение в «Огни и Города» было мгновенным, хотя я никогда раньше не слышал об этой фирме. Все были поражены этой новостью. Но это, должно быть, случилось потому, что мне наскучило делать одно и то же каждый день.

8. –Что же теперь с нами будет?

– Никому не выходить из дома, пока мы не обыщем все комнаты в поисках пропавшего пакета.

237

### Translate into English. Focus on Modal Verbs and Oblique Moods.

1. – Я должна встретить друга в 5 часов. Мне нужно вернуть ему некоторые видео.

– Ну да, у тебя мало времени. На твоём месте, я бы поехал на велосипеде. Если поедешь на велосипеде, тебе не придется зависеть от трафика, и не попадешь в пробку.

2. – Что ты собираешься делать с деньгами, которые вы скопили?

– Если бы у меня было столько денег, сколько хочу, я бы путешествовал и останавливался на две недели в каждом знаменитом месте на земле. Но Лиза и я должны выплачивать наш заем на обучение в колледже (college loan). А мне бы также хотелось купить новую машину. Но боюсь, что Лиза не согласится.

– Кто знает! Возможно, ей понравится эта идея.

3. – Что мне нравится в кошках, это то, что они могут заботиться о себе сами. Вам не приходится выгуливать кошку несколько раз в день. Вам не нужно мыть её слишком часто потому, что они чистятся сами. Они могут играть сами по себе и не требовать вашего внимания. Они проводят большую часть времени во сне. Они даже могут добывать себе пищу ловлей мышей и пауков. Они не будут возражать (talk back), когда ты с ними разговариваешь, и будут слушать очень внимательно. Если бы у меня не было аллергии, я бы завела (get oneself) себе кошку.

# TESTS

## TEST 1

**Make the right choice. Focus on the use of *can/could* and their equivalents.**

1. That's impossible. It ***can't be / couldn't have been / isn't able to*** be my letter. That's not my handwriting.
2. Michelle and Ash were different and they ***could never mistake / could never have been mistaken / can't ever be mistaken*** for sisters.
3. Have a look at those booties and socks. You ***can buy / could have bought / are able to buy*** here some awfully cute things for babies.
4. 'I'd like ***I can hear / I could hear / to be able to hear*** the story again.
5. Could I please take these files? – No, you ***couldn't have / couldn't / can't***.
6. I was wearing a red dress so that he ***could've seen / could see / can see*** me.
7. They ***can't be married / can't have been married / couldn't be married*** for so long.
8. One day people ***can find / could find / will be able to*** find a cure for cancer.
9. Could I come at five if you're not too busy? – Of course you ***can / could/ will be able***.
10. I enjoyed his latest book. I'm glad he ***can publish it / could publish it / was able to publish it***.
11. Is Jim really at the police station? ***Can they have arrested / Couldn't they arrest / Could they arrest*** him instead of the real thief?
12. Somebody has been to my room. ***Couldn't I have locked / Can I have failed to lock / Could I unlock*** the door?

## TEST 2

**Spot the errors if any and correct them. Focus on *can, may*.**

1. She may have change into some new clothes.
2. I could perhaps go to Brighton next week.
3. Where is George? – He might be at Sarah's place.
4. Why did you climb the tree? You may have killed yourself.
5. – Molly is very late. – She might stuck in the traffic jam.
6. May that be you? I thought you were in Italy.
7. You might have phoned me you were going to stay out all night.
8. He maybe clever, but he hasn't got much common sense.
9. Your car looks nice and it may have been comfortable, but it uses a lot of petrol.
10. After having a baby, a woman may suffer from depression for several months.
11. – She passed me without saying hello. – She may haven't recognized you.
12. May teachers wear jeans in the school?

### TEST 3

Choose the appropriate modal verb or its equivalent. More than one choice may be correct (*can, may*).

1. I **can't / couldn't / may** get through to Jeff, the line is busy.
2. The detective **couldn't / might not / may not see** us in the crowd.
3. **Could you / Were you able to / Might you** talk when you were two?
4. I was glad I **might / could / was able to** finish up the essay by 10. p.m.
5. **May / Can / Could** I use your mobile?
6. They have trained a lot. I'm sure they **may / might / can** win the match. (theoretical possibility)
7. You **may not / couldn't / can't** cross the street here.
8. At last he got his visa; he **could / might / was allowed to** enter the country.
9. **Might / May / Could** I ask you the time?
10. **May I / Might I / Am I allowed to** make personal calls?
11. You **may / might / can** have prompted me. I wish you had.
12. I **was allowed to / could / might** spend my last night at my aunt's.
13. Charles was lucky; he **might / could / was able to** reach the boarder before the sunset.
14. My son can't roller blade well but he **can / will be able to / may** do it by the end of the season.
15. I **can have heard / was able to hear / could hear** the dog barking in the yard.

### TEST 4

Make the right choice. Focus on *can, may, must*.

1. You must ... You are running a temperature.  
A. be fallen ill                      B. fall ill                      C. have fallen ill
2. They can't ... fond of each other. They hate each other.  
A. be                      B. have been                      C. have
3. I can't believe it. Can she ... his proposal?  
A. rejected                      B. have rejected                      C. has rejected
4. Mr. Baily may... at the office now.  
A. be                      B. had been                      C. have been
5. I may ... the cord. The telephone is out of order.  
A. cut                      B. be cutting.                      C. have cut
6. Can he ... you a shilling? I can't believe it.  
A. lent                      B. have lent                      C. has lent
7. The taxi may ... for us. Hurry up!  
A. have been waiting    B. be waiting                      C. have waited
8. – Where are the letters? – The secretary must ... them to the post-office.  
A. have taken                      B. be taken                      C. take
9. – Where is Mum? – She may ...  
A. do shopping                      B. be doing shopping    C. have been doing shopping

10. She must ... for two hours.  
**A.** have done shopping **B.** be doing shopping **C.** have been doing shopping
11. Can she ... a better house already?  
**A.** found **B.** be finding **C.** have found
12. He may ... his job.  
**A.** changed **B.** changing **C.** have changed
13. The performance ... be over. I can see people leaving the theatre.  
**A.** may **B.** can **C.** must
14. I'm not sure, but she ... be at the dentist's.  
**A.** can **B.** may **C.** must
15. ... they have returned already?  
**A.** Must **B.** Can **C.** May
16. He ... have failed his exam. He has always been a brilliant student.  
**A.** can't **B.** may not **C.** mustn't
17. Don't worry. He ... be here in five minutes. He always comes at 7 o'clock sharp.  
**A.** can **B.** may **C.** Must
18. ... he be her husband? He is much shorter than her.  
**A.** May **B.** Can **C.** Must
19. She ... be out. I don't see her coat here.  
**A.** can **B.** may **C.** must
20. She ... have left. I hear she was going to.  
**A.** must **B.** can **C.** may

## TEST 5

Use the English equivalents for the Russian expressions in brackets. Focus on *can, may, must*.

1. The requirement of the course is that all students (*должны сдать*) \_\_\_\_\_ an English placement test.
2. – The driver was badly injured but the children were not. – (*Они, должно быть, были пристегнуты ремнями*). [to wear seatbelts]  
 \_\_\_\_\_
3. (*Неужели все полеты из Катании (Catania) отложили*) \_\_\_\_\_ because of the rain?
4. – How did the burglars get into the house? My granny was at home. – (*Она, очевидно, не слышала шума*) \_\_\_\_\_
5. Mike Fuller, thought Cordelia, (*возможно, полезный человек*) \_\_\_\_\_ to be friendly with. But she (*не могла сосредоточиться*) \_\_\_\_\_ on the report and, after three pages, she put it to one side and picked up the wedding dress brochure again. The dress on page four was absolutely gorgeous. But one (*надо быть*) \_\_\_\_\_ insane to spend a few thousand dollars on a dress you'd only wear for a day.
6. Ash found out her mother was in the mountains now. Ash (*не могла представить*) \_\_\_\_\_ herself climbing the Himalayas or sailing single-



- handedly round the world. But she (*могла вообразить*) \_\_\_\_\_ her mother doing it. Her mother (*очевидно, смотрит на это*) \_\_\_\_\_ as a challenge, thought Ash.
7. (*Не может быть, что Джек взял*) \_\_\_\_\_ the jewelry. (*Это, должно быть,*) \_\_\_\_\_ a mistake. (*Возможно, они все еще в доме*) \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Dora tried to calm down. She sat down at the kitchen table with the crossword. But (*она была не в состоянии решить*) \_\_\_\_\_ a single clue. It was no use. She (*не могла сосредоточиться*) \_\_\_\_\_ on anything.
9. But (*ей, возможно, захочется*) \_\_\_\_\_ to stay in New York or (*она, может быть, встретит*) \_\_\_\_\_ some Wall Street millionaire and decide he's a much better proposition than a humble Irish stockbroker.
10. Listen carefully, Debbie. If a stranger offers you a ride, you (*ты не должна садиться в машину*) \_\_\_\_\_. (*Он может оказаться*) \_\_\_\_\_ a bad man.
11. (*Дождь, вероятно, шел*) \_\_\_\_\_ all night. (*Видишь*) \_\_\_\_\_ большие лужи на улице?
12. Probably, she thought, (*ей придется провести Рождество с сестрами*) \_\_\_\_\_ because that was what she always did.

## TEST 6

**Make the right choice. Focus on *must, be to, have to*.**

1. She ... wash up because her husband had done it.  
**A.** hadn't to                      **B.** didn't have to                      **C.** hadn't had to
2. They had to get there in a taxi, ... ?  
**A.** didn't they                      **B.** hadn't they                      **C.** did they
3. You ... go to church next Sunday – you haven't been for ages.  
**A.** really have to                      **B.** are really to                      **C.** really must
4. Frank ... be on a diet since his last heart attack.  
**A.** has to                      **B.** must                      **C.** has had to
5. He ... wear his uniform on Friday. The clerks can wear casual clothes.  
**A.** mustn't                      **B.** doesn't have to                      **C.** hasn't to
6. We met on board a ship which ... our home for a few months.  
**A.** was to be                      **B.** was to have been                      **C.** must have been
7. Mr. Robson is rich. He ... work for a living.  
**A.** is not to                      **B.** doesn't have to                      **C.** must not
8. – When did Emily buy her computer? – I don't know but she ... it two or three weeks ago. She got an allowance from her aunt those days.  
**A.** had to buy                      **B.** was to have bought **C.** must have bought
9. What ... to us if there is a lockout?  
**A.** is to happen                      **B.** will obviously happen                      **C.** has to happen
10. The locksmith ... at 9 a.m., but it's noon already and he hasn't turned up yet.  
**A.** must come                      **B.** was to have come                      **C.** was to come

11. I agree that women now ... settle down and start having kids at twenty.  
A. don't have to      B. mustn't      C. are not to

12. He must have failed to get to London. - ...  
A. Он не должен был добираться до Лондона.  
B. Возможно, он не добрался до Лондона.  
C. Он, очевидно, не добрался до Лондона.

## TEST 7

**Make the right choice. Focus on** *must, be to, have to, need, should, ought to.*

1. The charm teacher was a tiny little wizard who \_\_\_\_\_ stand on a pile of books to see over his class.

A. needed      B. must      C. had to

2. She turned to the rest of the class. "None of you \_\_\_\_\_ to move while I take this boy to the hospital wing! Come on, dear."

A. need      B. is      C. mustn't

3. - Listen. Someone is jumping on the floor in the apartment above.

- Mr. Johnson \_\_\_\_\_ his morning exercises.

A. must do      B. must be doing      C. should be doing

4. Hardly anyone had seen Harry play there because Wood had decided that Harry \_\_\_\_\_.

A. might be hidden      B. should be hidden      C. should've been hidden

5. Harry felt restless. Why \_\_\_\_\_ he to be afraid of Snake?

A. should      B. ought      C. must

6. She could see the result: her children were healthy and happy, but \_\_\_\_\_ she \_\_\_\_\_ her career for them?

A. must.....have sacrificed      B. was...to have sacrificed

C. should..... have sacrificed

7. - Happy birthday. I've brought you a present.

- Oh, thank you very much, but you \_\_\_\_\_.

A. needn't bother      B. needn't have bothered      C. didn't have to bother

8. It was absolutely confidential. You \_\_\_\_\_ his wife about the deal.

A. shouldn't have told      B. mustn't tell      C. needn't have told

9. You \_\_\_\_\_ use your mobile when driving. It's dangerous.

A. mustn't      B. oughtn't      C. needn't

10. The Harriots \_\_\_\_\_ a connecting flight in Brussels, but all the flights to Belgium had been cancelled because of the air traffic controllers' strike.

A. were to take      B. were to have taken      C. had to take

11. Christine told us they \_\_\_\_\_ to walk as their taxi had broken down two miles from the airport.

A. had had      B. had      C. ought

12. As I entered the hall I saw them talking, so I \_\_\_\_\_ them to each other.

A. didn't have to introduce      B. shouldn't have introduced

C. needn't have introduced

## TEST 8

**Make the best choice. Focus on *can, may, must, be to, have to, need, should, shall, dare***

- Hagrid .....to tell him something he had to do, like tapping the third brick on the left to get into Diagon Alley.  
A. must forget                      B. could have forgotten      C. must have forgotten
- Are all your family wizards? So you.....lots of magic already.  
A. must've known                  B. should know                  C. may know
- Children's education is also the responsibility of the parents. Girls and boys ... learn to speak, dress themselves, and get along with others.  
A. must                                  B. might                              C. need
- You ... have polished the glass, but still it was very kind of you.  
A. mustn't                              B. couldn't                          C. needn't
- Kevin .... be hungry. I just saw him eat a huge meal.  
A. must                                  B. might                              C. can't
- The decoration of the room looks wonderful. You ... up all night doing this.  
A. could've been                      B. must've been                      C. must be
- I'm not an early riser but I ... wake up at six to get to work by nine.  
A. should                                B. must                                C. have to
- I thought we had parted for ever. But we ... many years later.  
A. could meet                          B. were to meet                      C. might have met
- Emily turned away. She ... look into his eyes.  
A. didn't dare look                  B. couldn't have looked  
C. didn't dare to look
- ... I help you with your luggage? -Yes, please.  
A. Should                                B. Shall                                C. Would
- You ... have eaten so many candies.  
A. might                                B. shouldn't                          C. were to
- Armande Voizin reminds me of my mother in some ways; the bright wicked eyes, the long hair which \_\_\_\_\_ glossy black in her youth.  
A. must've been                      B. must be                              C. could

## TEST 9

Make the **best choice**. Focus on *can, may, must, be to, have to, need, should, ought to, won't, would*

When Janet McMorran broke her back 12 years ago, the thing that ...1... more than anything was the realization that she no longer ...2... tennis. She began playing it in childhood and this game ... 3 ... her passion for the rest of her life. "I ...4... when I didn't enjoy it."

It was a matter of further frustration when her children, Donald and Rowly, were born that she ...5... face them across the net. "Perhaps I ...6... swim with them," she said, "but I don't think I ...7... tennis." The doctors reassured her saying that she ...8... up her courage and hope, but she ...9... believe them.

The last summer she was in hospital in Stoke Mandeville where the International Games were taking place. She watched an exhibition of wheelchair tennis and without fear responded when they suggested ... 10... (попытаться). It was a revelation.

Now Janet is a member at the London Wheelchair Tennis Association. She ... 11... to worry much – she ...12... most Sunday mornings and occasionally in the week at Bishop's Park in Fulham. When three-and-a-half-year old Donald and 18-month-old Rowley are old enough to hold a racket, their mother ...13... ready for them. Where there is a will, there is a way.

- |                            |                        |                              |
|----------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. A. may rankle           | B. must have rankled   | C. might rankle              |
| 2. A. can play             | B. could've played     | C. would be able to play     |
| 3. A. was to be            | B. might have been     | C. could be                  |
| 4. A. hardly remember      | B. hardly can remember | C. can hardly remember       |
| 5. A. should never         | B. can never           | C. would never be able to    |
| 6. A. could                | B. may                 | C. need to                   |
| 7. A. will be able to play | B. can play            | C. could have played         |
| 8. A. needed pluck         | B. ought to pluck      | C. should've have plucked    |
| 9. A. won't                | B. wouldn't            | C. didn't have to            |
| 10. A. she could have a go | B. to have a go        | C. that she should have a go |
| 11. A. mustn't             | B. hasn't              | C. doesn't need              |
| 12. A. is allowed to       | B. is able to play to  | C. should play               |
| 13. A. has to be           | B. can be              | C. ought to be               |

## TEST 10

Complete the sentences with appropriate modal verbs and appropriate forms of the verb *'TO VISIT'*.

1. Alex \_\_\_\_\_ his parents next month.
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ his parent. They are still waiting for him.
3. Alex feels he \_\_\_\_\_ visit his parents.
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ visit your parents. They miss you.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ his parents? They told me nothing about his visit.
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ come and see us some day.
7. He \_\_\_\_\_ visit the dentist.
8. He \_\_\_\_\_ his parents. They look cheerful.
9. He \_\_\_\_\_ his parents. He is going to do it tomorrow.

10. I \_\_\_\_\_ his parents because he has no time these days.
11. Why \_\_\_\_\_ I visit his parents? He can do it himself.
12. He \_\_\_\_\_ his parents more often. He is an only child in the family.
13. He \_\_\_\_\_ his parents, but he fell ill.
14. He \_\_\_\_\_ his parents twice a month but now he can't.
15. He \_\_\_\_\_ his parents. He mentioned something about it. But I'm not quite sure, you know.

## TEST 11

**Spot the errors if any and correct them. Focus on *can, may, must, be to, have to, need, should, ought to, shall, will, dare*.**

1. He managed to say a few words before he collapsed and Aunt Petunia has to run and get him a large brandy.
2. He looked so dangerous with half his moustache missing that no one didn't dare argue.
3. Forgive and forget, I say, we should to give him a second chance.
4. I was to take my medicine but I forgot.
5. He mustn't be very old – he is about 30, isn't he?
6. I like the dessert. Where are such cakes to be bought?
7. I dare you climb onto the roof!
8. The hot water tap won't open. You ought to ask someone to repair it.
9. Was he imagining things? May all this have anything to do with the Potters?
10. Where are the sweets? Could you eat all of them?
11. 'Hagrid,' he said quietly, 'Perhaps you must have made a mistake.'
12. Do you want me to open the window? Will I do it right now?
13. You needn't to buy tickets. The concert is free of charge.
14. Join our courses. If you take them, you can speak Italian more or less fluently.
15. – Give Aunt Michelle a call, Annie. She'd love to hear from you. –Sure I can.

## TEST 12

**Translate into English.**

1. Иммигранты, должно быть, были уверены, что их жизнь в Америке будут лучше.
2. Мы условились пойти по магазинам завтра. Может, я смогу купить новый телефон.
3. Незачем тебе перчить и солить мясо. Я уже это сделала.
4. Ада, возможно, и доплыла бы до берега, но она предпочла спасение тонущего котенка.
5. Я сделала все возможное в этом проекте, но ему не суждено было выиграть награду.
6. Мне следовало знать, что на него нельзя полагаться.
7. В молодости я бывало носила очень высокие каблуки, но теперь не могу.
8. Лизе предстоит организовать брачную церемонию. Вероятно, она нервничает по этому поводу.

9. – Мне отключить телефон? – Нет, не надо.
10. Это туфли, которые я должна была выбросить, но Нелли меня отговорила.
11. – Мои комнатные цветы часто вянут. Что мне делать? – Может быть, тебе следует посмотреть в интернете и найти там какую-нибудь информацию.
12. Аманда купила машину, и теперь ей не приходится пользоваться общественным транспортом.
13. Если ты плохо себя чувствуешь, не надо было приходиться на работу.
14. Я просила его не уезжать. Их северный климат непременно отличается от нашего. Но он и слушать не желал.
15. Неужели Тина решила не выходить замуж за Роберта? Ты, наверное, шутишь.
16. Спорим тебе не сесть на эту лошадь. (to mount a horse)

## TEST 13

### Translate into English.

1. Нужно ли говорить, сколько это может занять времени?
2. И как они смеют думать, что я мог бы лишить человека жизни?
3. Нормани, возможно, и слушал, когда с ним разговаривала эта женщина, но всякий раз он не мог не восхищаться глубиной ее глаз.
4. Он остановил проходящего мимо проводника, но так и не решился спросить номер платформы.
5. Должно быть, я говорил с большим отчаянием, потому что увидел сочувствие в глазах Анны.
6. Я обязательно помогу ему доказать свою невиновность. Для этого мне нужна вся информация, которую можно только достать, плохая или хорошая.
7. Неужели ее отец действительно верил, что для того, чтобы быть хорошим семьянином, ему всего лишь надо платить за уроки балета дочери, не разводиться с женой и не жениться на той, которую он действительно любил?
8. Ты должна перестать терзать себя. Это был несчастный случай. И, если я смог простить тебя, почему не можешь простить себя ты?
9. Ты еще ребенок. Не надо находиться в воде так долго.
10. Он сидел на диванчике, медленно потягивая скотч, и стороннему наблюдателю мог бы показаться совершенно спокойным.
11. Конечно же, ему можно было так и не волноваться – ведь он так долго готовился к примирению.
12. – Неужели ты закончил всю работу? – Ну, это было нелегко, но мне удалось это сделать.
13. – Вот это по-нашему. (That's my girl.) Ты могла бы победить на выборах. – Могла бы победить? О чем ты говоришь, Мэк? Я намерена это сделать. Я должна.
14. Можно было и не брать зонтик, так как мы поедем на машине
15. Ему надо было рассказать мне о своих трудностях. Я, возможно, смогла бы ему помочь.

## TEST 14

### Translate into English.

1. – Мама неожиданно пришла домой и увидела, что я разговариваю с игрушкой, поэтому-то она и выбросила ее.  
– Ей не надо было так поступать. Это был твой друг, а друзья могут скрашивать одиночество.
2. – Вы только должны нам сказать, сколько придется платить за комнату.  
– Не надо беспокоиться. Я могу и подождать.
3. Он повернулся к окну. «Да, я понимаю: там, где ты когда-то жила, был мирный уголок, где все было одинаковым. Но тебе, должно быть, было там очень скучно».
4. Фортуна (Fortune) внимательно смотрела на людей, спешащих в магазин. Здесь они, должно быть, смогут купить все необходимое.
5. Я добрался до бухты Тарами только в половине первого. Но мне можно было и не торопиться: катер так и не появился.
6. Не может быть, что ты ударил человека, я не верю. Да, я знаю: он вор. Но тебе не следовало этого делать. Насилие никогда не может быть оправдано.
7. Не может быть, что она испытывает чувство ревности. Ревность не очень хорошая черта характера. Она никогда и ни за что не будет ревновать.
8. Что могло произойти? Кто мог сотворить подобное с безобидным мороженщиком? Нет, это, должно быть, была ошибка. Не могли же люди быть настолько жестокими.
9. Лейз (Leith) внимательно на нее посмотрел. Неужели она пытается его защитить? Да, не нуждается он в том, чтобы его защищали.
10. Не успела она выйти, как Лейз снова обратился к компьютеру. С чего же начать – с истории, науки? Наверное, надо начать с чего-нибудь попроще.
11. Ее вопрос пронзил его, как меч. Он подумал, что она, должно быть, читает его мысли. И она, скорей всего, его никогда не любила.
12. Я обещаю: ничего с тобой не случится. Ты всегда будешь в безопасности.

## TEST 15

### Translate into English. Focus on Modal Verbs and Oblique Moods.

1. – Куда это я могла положить ручку?  
– Вот она. Но тебе придется взять другую. Эта никак не пишет.
2. – Неужели Кейт пробыла в больнице так долго?  
– Что ты сказала?  
– Я сказала, что не может быть, чтобы она пробыла там так долго. Я на днях ее встретила, и она выглядела, будто только что вернулась из дома отдыха. Жаль, что ты ее не видела.
3. – Я не видела Браунов с мая.  
– Ну, в начале мая они были в Турции. Сейчас они, очевидно, вернулись и, возможно, живут на даче.

4. Мне не пришлось делать пересадку. Был прямой поезд.
5. Можно было и не делать пересадку. Оказывается, есть прямой поезд.
6. Когда вы должны встречать её? В 5.30?
7. Вчера я был дома весь вечер. Должен был прийти доктор Джонсон. Но, возможно, его вызвали в больницу. Иначе бы он обязательно пришел.
8. Тебе лучше купить билеты сейчас. – Чего ради я пойду за ними сейчас? Поезд будет только через пять дней, и я уверен, что смогу купить билеты в конце недели.
9. Мои друзья уезжают сегодня вечером. Они уже, вероятно, вернулись домой с работы и, возможно, укладывают чемоданы сейчас. Если бы не экзамены, которые я должна сдавать в конце июня, я бы поехала с ними.
10. – Мне читать вопросы?
  - Нет, незачем. Читайте текст, пожалуйста.
  - Какое было последнее предложение?
  - Вам следовало следить за чтением.

## TEST 16

### Translate into English.

**a)** Коук был в поле. Часа два, должно быть, прошло с тех пор, как он сбежал из тюрьмы. Погода была ужасная. Он промок до нитки. Мысли мелькали в его голове: «Неужели все усилия были напрасны? Нет, я обязательно доберусь до Лондона. Я обязательно должен найти Мастерса. И тогда он еще пожалеет, что я провел в тюрьме четыре года за то, чего не совершал. Это ему надо было сидеть вместо меня».

И Коук продолжал настойчиво идти вперед. Становилось темно. Он шел наугад, не зная, в каком направлении должен идти. Коук не смел даже думать, что бежал напрасно. Неужели ему суждено замерзнуть здесь, в поле? Должен же быть выход.

Вдруг он увидел маленький огонек впереди. Это могли быть огни машины. А может быть, это просто огонек в окне домика. И он решил идти к этому огоньку надежды: он был так голоден и так продрог, что едва мог шевелить руками и ногами. Будь что будет. Человек не может не надеяться.

**b)** Инспектор Скотланд Ярда Бэкстор был вне себя от ярости. Неужели Коук опять сбежал? Да он не только сбежал, но и нанес полицейским сильные телесные удары и украл их автомобиль. Бэкстор представил себе, как босс будет комментировать события; он умел быть очень саркастичным, если хотел:

«Ну что, Бэкстор. Возможно, вы все объясните мне? Сможете ли? Сдается мне, что машина была у вас до того, как вы встретили Коука, и что после встречи с вами она оказалась у него. Как прикажете объясняться с газетами? Следует ли нам сказать газетчикам, что полиция всегда готова служить людям?» Не следовало давать Коуку такого шанса. Наверняка, от машины он избавится. Куда это Коук может направиться? Не может же он быть настолько глупым, чтобы стремиться в Лондон. Но если он, Бэкстор, не поймает Коука до того, как тот добе-



рется до Лондона, объяснение с шефом может быть более серьезным. Это значит, что ему придется очень постараться, чтобы поймать беглеца.

с) Двое полицейских скучали. С самого утра они блокировали дорогу в холмах, где и движения-то никакого не было. «Не дашь ли прикурить?» - спросил один из них. Это уже была, наверное, двадцатая сигарета.

Вдруг они увидели быстро приближающуюся полицейскую машину. «Может быть, нам обед везут» - подумали они. «Хорошо бы поесть что-нибудь» Но очень скоро они поняли, что машина останавливаться и не собирается. «Будем останавливать? У нас приказ: останавливать *все* машины». Человек в машине начал сигналить, и полицейские заколебались: машина-то была полицейская. Расстояние между их машинами быстро сокращалось. Но прежде чем они смогли что-либо предпринять, Коук (это действительно был он) пронесся мимо них и скрылся в лондонском направлении. Полицейские с трудом верили своим глазам. Все могло бы быть и хуже.

# KEYS TO 'TEST YOURSELF' EXERCISES

## **CAN** (ex. 27, p. 37)

1. correct
2. correct
3. Can't she – Can she
4. correct
5. I could – I can
6. can provide – will be able to provide
7. correct
8. Can they have finished – Can they finish
9. couldn't have went – couldn't have gone
10. could have seen – could see
11. can't dance – have never been able to dance/haven't been able to dance
12. can work – will be able to work/could work

## **MAY** (ex. 45, p. 45)

1. might have wanted – might/may want
2. might haven't climbed – might not have climbed
3. Of course you might – Of course you may
4. might got stuck – might have got stuck
5. correct
6. maybe – may be
7. may late – may be late
8. may have informed – might have informed
9. May be – Maybe
10. might spent – might've spent
11. might not – may not
12. may needs – may need

## **CAN – MAY compared** (ex. 58, p. 52)

1. might have had – might have
2. correct
3. might have arrested – might have been arrested
4. Can he has been – Can he have been
5. correct
6. correct
7. can't carry – couldn't be carrying
8. have made – make
9. managed lock – managed to lock
10. might happen – might have happened
11. correct
12. correct

## **MUST** (ex. 70, p. 58)

1. correct
2. must have happened – must happen
3. must have going – must have gone/must be going
4. mustn't to lock – mustn't lock
5. correct
6. may go – must go
7. must overheard -- must have overheard
8. correct
9. You must not be – Obviously you're not
10. may – must
11. may give up – must give up
12. must have fail to - must have failed to

## **CAN – MAY – MUST compared** (ex. 100, p. 77)

1. d) must have returned
8. b) Could you turn

- |                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 2. a) Can Joe have failed to return | 9. b) must be kidding     |
| 3. a) Patrick couldn't have married | 10. d) might have helped  |
| 4. b) must have been doing          | 11. a) cannot solve       |
| 5. d) must be tired                 | 12. b) could move         |
| 6. c) couldn't have taken           | 13. c) must have been     |
| 7. c) there might be                | 14. a) couldn't have left |
|                                     | 15. c) could smell        |

**TO BE TO – TO HAVE TO compared** (ex. 123, p. 91)

- |                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. we didn't have to    | 7. had to leave          |
| 2. was to have lived    | 8. has to use            |
| 3. Are we to start      | 9. are to meet           |
| 4. was to happen        | 10. were to have called  |
| 5. doesn't have to work | 11. were to call         |
| 6. is it to be          | 12. we'll have to reduce |

**NEED** (ex. 131, p. 94)

- |      |       |
|------|-------|
| 1. a | 7. b  |
| 2. b | 8. b  |
| 3. a | 9. a  |
| 4. b | 10. b |
| 5. b | 11. a |
| 6. a | 12. b |

**SHOULD, OUGHT TO** (ex. 131, p. 103)

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. should – must                                       | 7. correct                            |
| 2. should have come – should come                      | 8. oughtn't apply – oughtn't to apply |
| 3. been kept – be kept                                 | 9. correct                            |
| 4. ought to saving – ought to have saved/ought to save | 10. correct                           |
| 5. should have been – should/must be                   | 11. correct                           |
| 6. correct   | 12. don't eat – shouldn't eat         |

**MUST – BE TO – HAVE TO – NEED – SHOULD – OUGHT TO compared** (ex. 178, p. 116)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. was to arrive – was to have arrived | 7. has to – would have to                                 |
| 2. haven't you? – don't you?           | 8. is to be – ought to be cherished (should be cherished) |
| 3. correct                             | 9. ought have done – ought to do                          |
| 4. should ask – should have asked      | 10. correct   |
| 5. were to use – had to use            | 11. has to do – has had to do                             |
| 6. correct                             | 12. must have woken – had to wake                         |

**GENERAL REVISION** (ex. 223, p. 146)

- |      |       |
|------|-------|
| 1. A | 6. A  |
| 2. C | 7. B  |
| 3. B | 8. C  |
| 4. B | 9. B  |
| 5. C | 10. A |

---

## CONTENTS

---

<b>Предисловие.....</b>	<b>3</b>
Modality.....	4
Modal Verbs.....	11
Exercises.....	22
CAN.....	22
MAY.....	38
CAN – MAY compared.....	46
MUST.....	53
CAN – MAY – MUST compared.....	59
BE TO.....	79
HAVE TO.....	84
HOUSE RULES.....	88
BE TO – HAVE TO compared.....	89
NEED.....	92
SHOULD / OUGHT TO.....	95
MUST – BE TO – HAVE TO – NEED – SHOULD compared.....	104
SHALL.....	117
WILL / WOULD.....	119
DARE.....	124
REVISION. MODAL VERBS.....	127
REVISION. OBLIQUE MOODS AND MODAL VERBS.....	148
TESTS.....	157
KEYS TO ‘TEST YOURSELF’ EXERCISES.....	169

*Учебное издание*

Максимова Татьяна Дмитриевна

## MODAL VERBS IN USE

*Учебное пособие*

Компьютерная верстка – Максимов Л.В.

Подписано в печать 02.11.2015 г.  
Объём 14,3 уч.-изд. л. Формат 60x84x16. Бумага офсетная.  
Гарнитура Book Antiqua. Тираж 100 экз. Заказ № 62.  
Отпечатано в ФГБОУ ВО  
«Алтайский государственный педагогический университет»  
656031, г. Барнаул, ул. Н. Крупской, 139а  
тел. 8 (3852) 38-84-59

